California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING: This product contains or emits chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential.

California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See *www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/*

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a NOTICE symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

This owner's manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Safe Driving P. 27

For Safe Driving P. 28
Seat Belts P. 32
Airbags P. 39

Instrument Panel P. 67

Indicators P. 68
Gauges and Displays P. 95

Controls P. 113

Clock P. 114
Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 116
Opening and Closing the Moonroof* P. 138
Adjusting the Seats P. 160

Features P. 185

Audio System P. 186
Audio System Basic Operation P. 192, 215
Customized Features P. 298, 316
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver* P. 340

Driving P. 411

Before Driving P. 412
Towing a Trailer P. 417
Refueling P. 497
Fuel Economy P. 499

Maintenance P. 501

Before Performing Maintenance P. 502
Maintenance Minder™ P. 505
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 537
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 551

Handling the Unexpected P. 557

Tools P. 558
If a Tire Goes Flat P. 559
Overheating P. 572
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 574

Information P. 583

Specifications P. 584
Identification Numbers P. 588
Emissions Testing P. 591
Warranty Coverages P. 593

Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 27

Child Safety P. 52
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 64
Safety Labels P. 65

Instrument Panel P. 67

Opening and Closing the Trunk P. 128
Security System P. 132
Opening and Closing the Windows P. 135
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 139
Adjusting the Mirrors P. 158
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 168
Climate Control System P. 180

Controls P. 113

Features P. 185

Audio Error Messages P. 286
General Information on the Audio System P. 291
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® P. 343, 374
Compass* P. 409

Driving P. 411

When Driving P. 421
Braking P. 479
Parking Your Vehicle P. 491
Accessories and Modifications P. 500

Maintenance P. 501

Maintenance Under the Hood P. 513
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 529
Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 539
Battery P. 548
Remote Transmitter Care P. 549
Cleaning P. 552

Handling the Unexpected P. 557

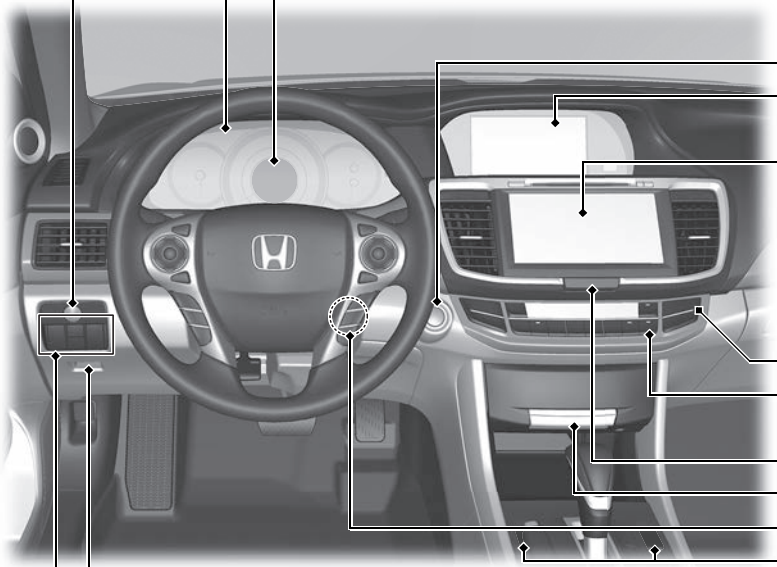
Engine Does Not Start P. 565
Jump Starting P. 568
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 571
Fuses P. 578
Emergency Towing P. 582

Information P. 583

Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 589
Reporting Safety Defects P. 590
Authorized Manuals P. 595
Customer Service Information P. 596

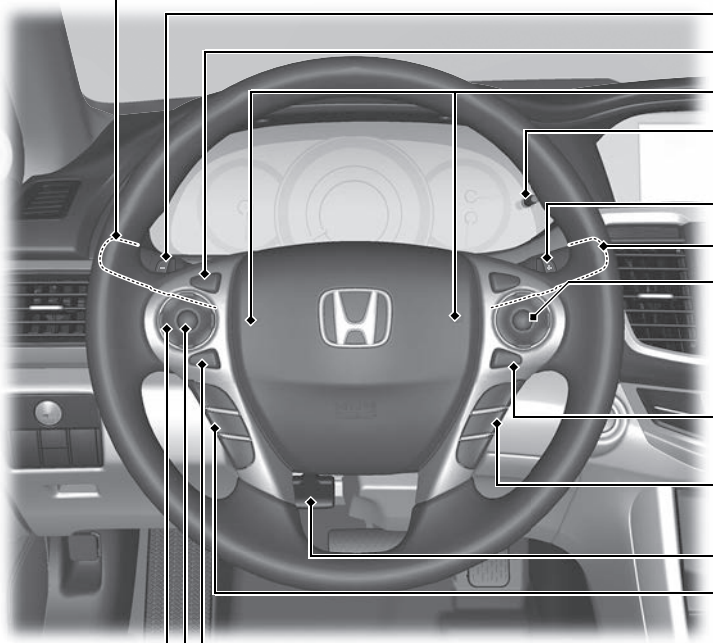
Index P. 600

Visual Index



- ECON Button P. 441
- System Indicators P. 68
- Gauges P. 95
- Information Display* P. 96
- Multi-Information Display* P. 99
- ENGINE START/STOP Button*1 P. 140
- Audio/Information Screen P. 193, 216
- Audio System P. 192, 215
- Navigation System* See Navigation System Manual
- Audio/Information Touch Screen* P. 218
- Auxiliary Input Jack* P. 188
- Climate Control System P. 180
- Rear Window Defogger P. 154
- Heated Mirror Button* P. 154
- Hazard Warning Button
- Center Pocket P. 171
- Ignition Switch*1 P. 139
- Front Seat Heater Switches* P. 178
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Button* P. 476
- (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System OFF) Button P. 472
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) OFF Button* P. 486
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Button* P. 461
- Parking Sensor System Button* P. 493

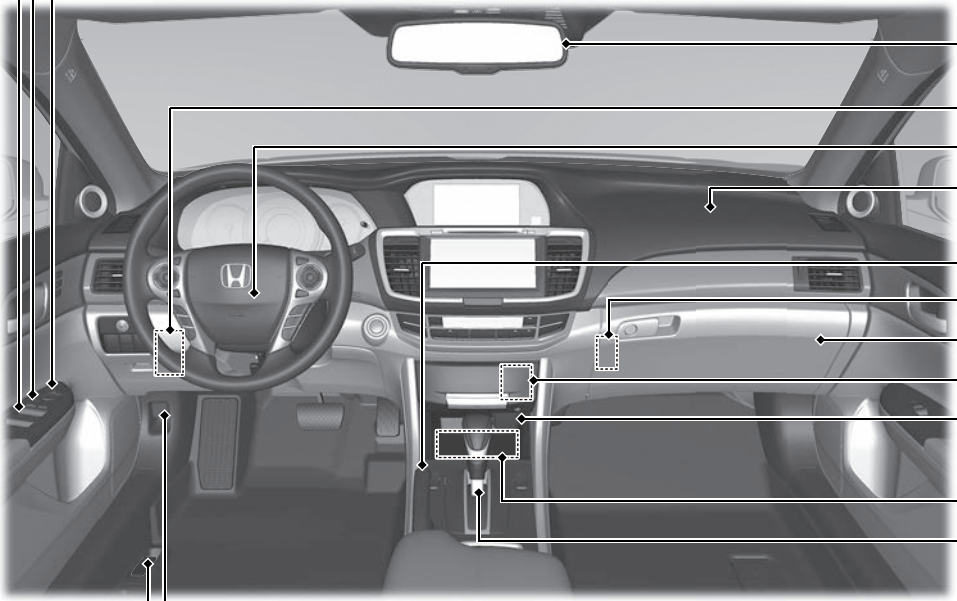
*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



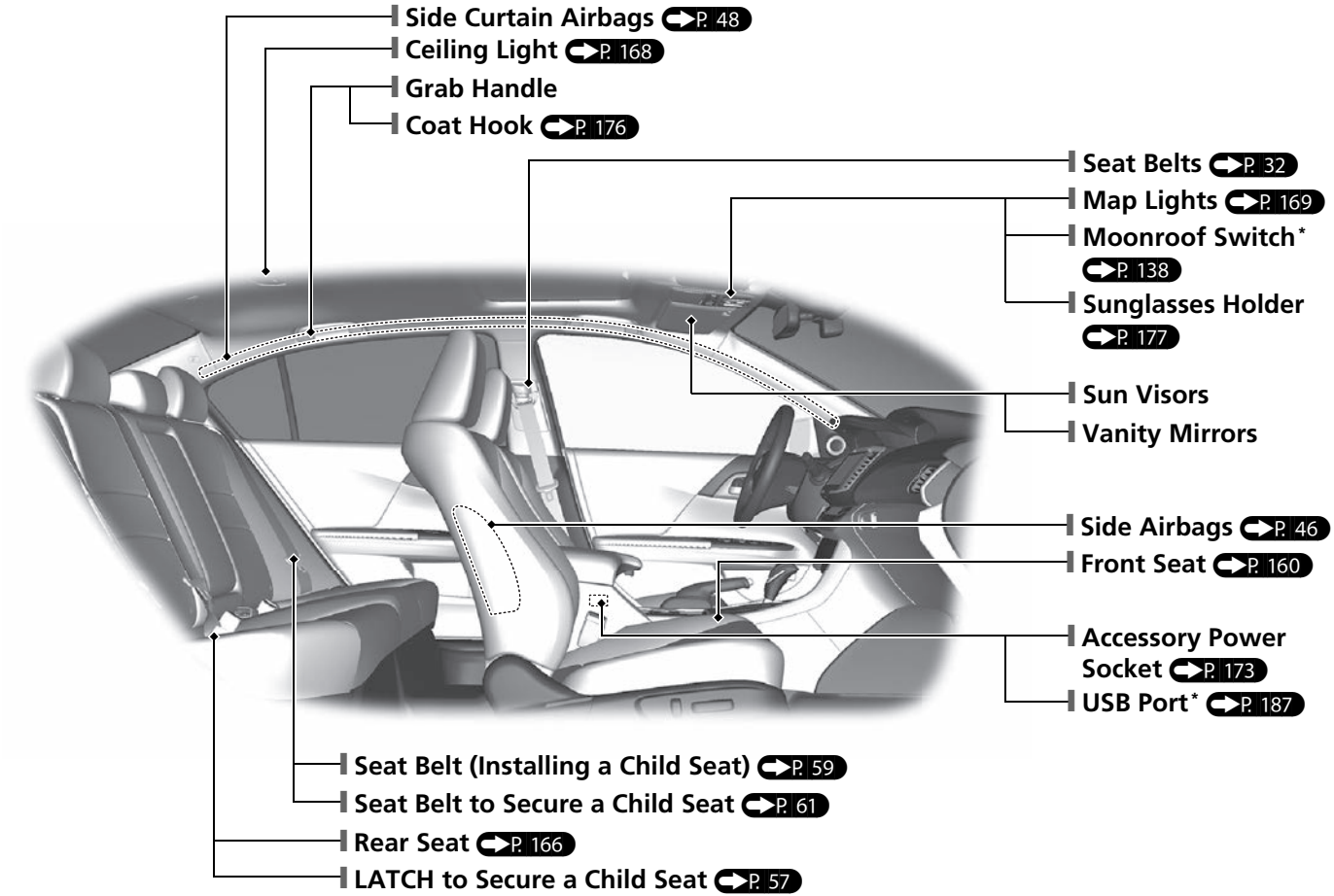
- Headlights/Turn Signals P. 144
- Fog Lights* P. 146
- LaneWatch™* P. 473
- Paddle Shifter (Shift down)* P. 434
- (Display) Button P. 193, 216
- Horn (Press an area around .)
- (Select/Reset) Knob P. 96
- Brightness Control P. 153
- Paddle Shifter (Shift up)* P. 434
- Wipers/Washers P. 151
- Cruise Control Buttons P. 442
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Buttons* P. 448
- Distance Button* P. 455
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button* P. 466
- / (Information) Buttons* P. 99
- SEL/RESET Button* P. 100
- Steering Wheel Adjustments P. 157
- Navigation System Voice Control Buttons* P. 235, See Navigation System Manual
- *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® System Voice Control Buttons P. 343, 374
- MENU Button* P. 190
- SOURCE Button P. 190
- + / − / ◀ / ▶ Buttons P. 190

* Not available on all models

Visual Index

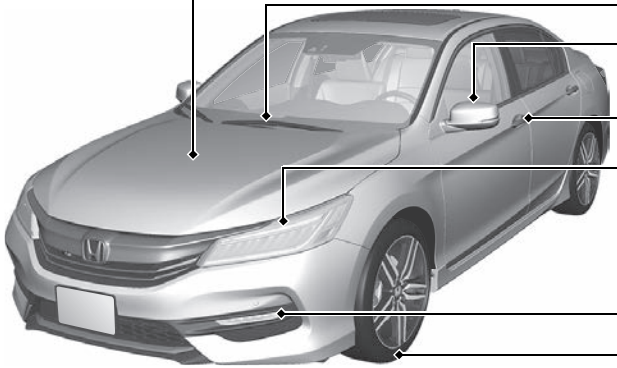


- Power Window Switches P. 135
- Power Door Lock Master Switch P. 126
- Door Mirror Controls P. 159
- Rearview Mirror P. 158
- Interior Fuse Box P. 580
- Driver's Front Airbag P. 42
- Passenger's Front Airbag P. 42
- Parking Brake P. 479
- Trunk Main Switch* P. 130
- Glove Box P. 170
- USB Port P. 187
- Accessory Power Socket P. 173
- Wireless Charger* P. 174
- Shift Lever
  Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) P. 430, 432
  Automatic Transmission P. 436
  Manual Transmission P. 438
- Hood Release Handle P. 515
- Trunk Release P. 128
- Fuel Fill Door Release Handle P. 498

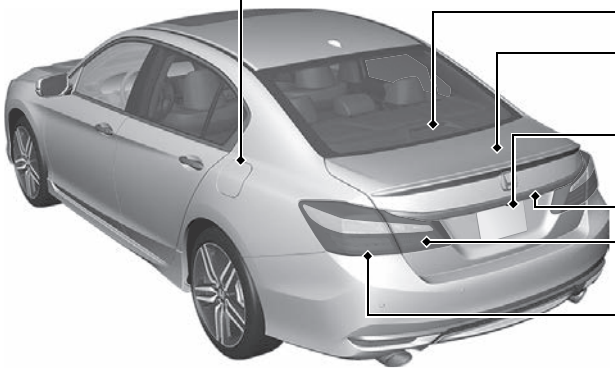


* Not available on all models

Visual Index



- Maintenance Under the Hood P. 513
- Windshield Wipers P. 151, 537
- Power Door Mirrors P. 159
- Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 119
- Headlights P. 144, 529
- Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Lights P. 144, 531, 532, 533
- Parking Lights P. 144, 531, 533
- Fog Lights* P. 146, 531
- Tires P. 539, 559

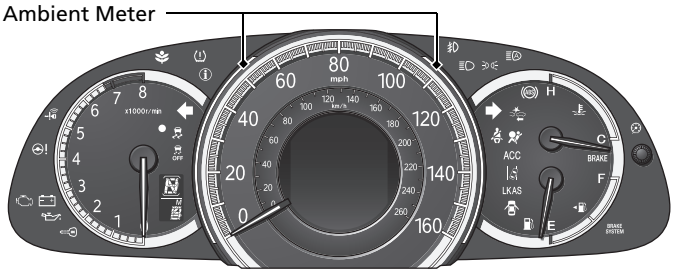


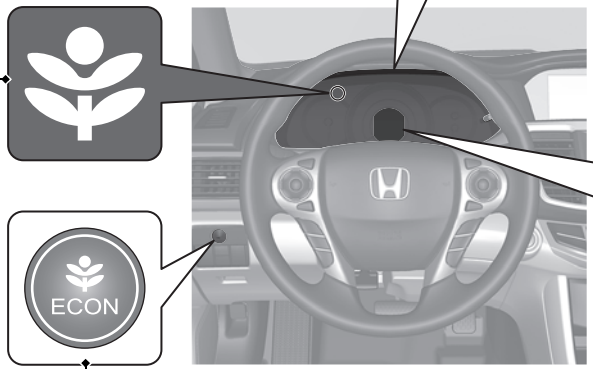
- How to Refuel P. 498
- High-Mount Brake Light P. 536
- Opening/Closing the Trunk P. 128
- Emergency Trunk Release Lever P. 131
- Multi-View Rear Camera P. 496
- Trunk Release Button* P. 129
- Back-Up Lights P. 535
- Taillights P. 535
- Brake Lights P. 534
- Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 534
- Rear Side Marker/Taillights P. 534

Eco Assist System P. 441

Ambient Meter

- Changes color to reflect your driving style.
  Green: Fuel efficient driving
  Light green: Moderate acceleration/ deceleration
  White: Aggressive acceleration/ deceleration
- The ambient meter color changes in accordance with your brake or accelerator pedal operation.





Models with multi-information display

The message is displayed for a few seconds when the **ECON** button is pressed.

ECON Button P. 441
Helps maximize fuel economy.

ECON Mode Indicator P. 78
Comes on when the **ECON** button is pressed.

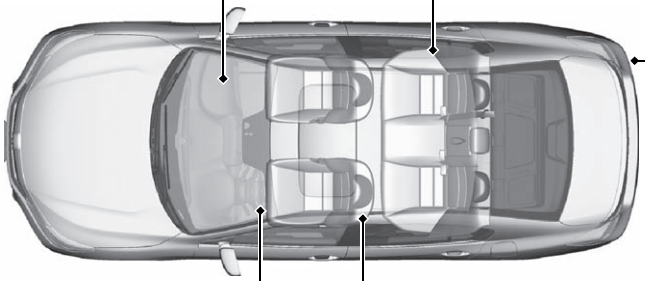
Safe Driving P. 27

Airbags P. 39

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety P. 52

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Smaller children should be properly restrained in a forward-facing child seat.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat.



Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 64

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts P. 32

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

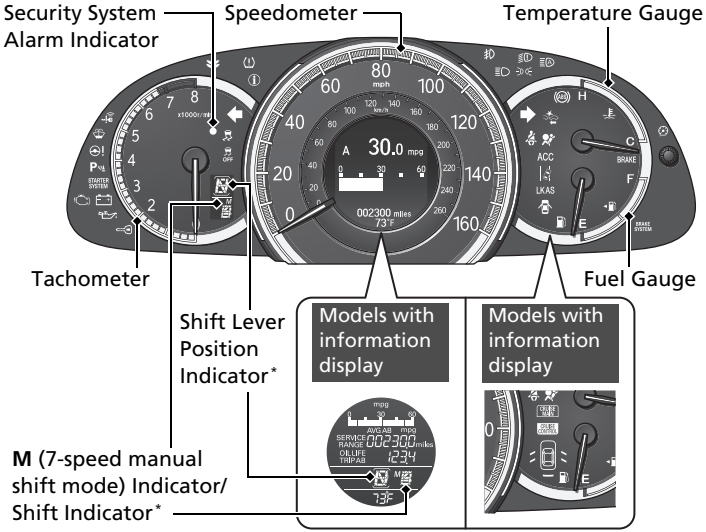
Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Before Driving Checklist P. 31

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Instrument Panel P. 67

Gauges P. 95/Information Display* P. 96/ Multi-Information Display* P. 99/System Indicators P. 68



System Indicators

- Malfunction Indicator Lamp
- Low Oil Pressure Indicator
- Charging System Indicator
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator
- VSA® **OFF** Indicator
- Immobilizer System Indicator
- Smart Entry System Indicator*
- STARTER SYSTEM U.S. / Canada — Starter System Indicator*
- Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
- Washer Level Indicator*
- System Message Indicator*
- Maintenance Minder Indicator*
- Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator

System Indicators

- ECON mode Indicator
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator*
- LKAS — Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber)*
- LKAS — Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (White)*

Lights Indicators

- Lights On Indicator
- High Beam Indicator
- Fog Light Indicator*
- Light Control Indicator*
- Auto High-Beam Indicator (Green)*/ Auto High-Beam Indicator (Amber)*

System Indicators

- Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
- ABS — Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator
- BRAKE U.S. / Canada — Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
- BRAKE SYSTEM U.S. / Canada — Brake System Indicator (Amber)
- Door and Trunk Open Indicator
- Parking Sensor System Indicator*
- Low Fuel Indicator
- Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
- Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
- ACC — Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) Indicator (Amber)*
- ACC — Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) Indicator (White)*
- CRUISE MAIN — **CRUISE MAIN** Indicator*
- CRUISE CONTROL — **CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator*

* Not available on all models

Controls P. 113

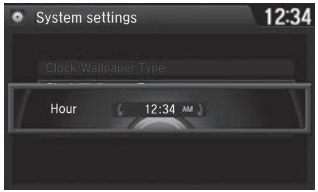
Clock P. 114

Models with two displays

The audio system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

1. Select HOME, then select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Adjust the hours and minutes by selecting ▲ / ▼.
4. Select **OK** to set the time.

Models with one display



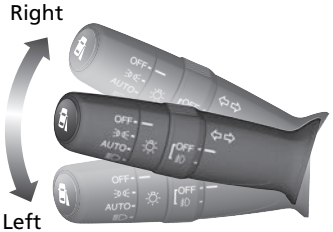
1. Enter the **Clock Adjustment** screen.
   ➔ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 114
2. Rotate to change hour, then press .
3. Rotate to change minute, then press .

ENGINE START/STOP Button* P. 140

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.

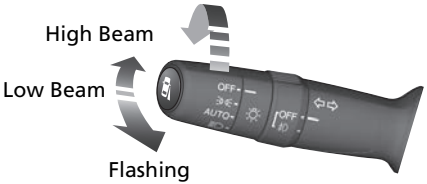
Turn Signals P. 144

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P. 144

Light Control Switches



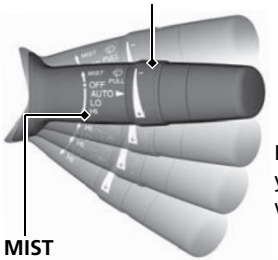
Wipers and Washers

P. 151

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring
−: Low Sensitivity*1
− : Lower speed, fewer sweeps*2

+: High Sensitivity*1
+ : Higher speed, more sweeps*2



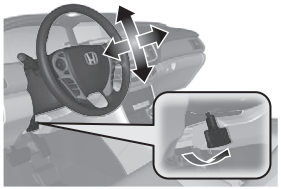
Pull toward you to spray washer fluid.

MIST
OFF
AUTO*1: Wiper speed varies automatically
INT*2: Low speed with intermittent
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe

*1:Vehicle with auto wiper
*2:Vehicle without auto wiper

Steering Wheel P. 157

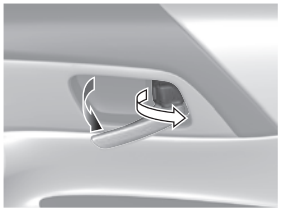
- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

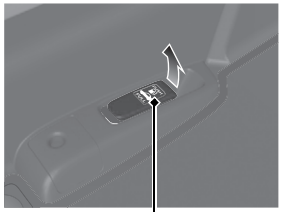
P. 124

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



- Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

Trunk P. 128

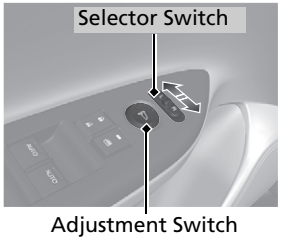


- To unlock and open the trunk:
- Pull the trunk release.
- Press the trunk release button on the remote transmitter or the smart entry remote.
- Press the trunk release button* on the trunk lid.

Power Door Mirrors

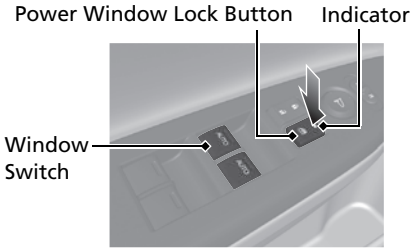
P. 159

- With the ignition switch in ON (II)*1, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.



Power Windows P. 135

- With the ignition switch in ON (II)*1, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Climate Control System P. 180

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windshield.

Models with navigation system

The climate control system is voice operable. P. 235

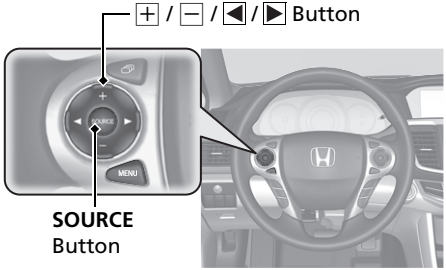
- Air flows from dashboard vents and back of the center console*.
- Air flows from floor and dashboard vents, and back of the center console*.
- Air flows from floor vents.
- Air flows from floor and windshield defroster vents.

* Not available on all models

Features P. 185

Audio Remote Controls

P. 190



- + / − Button
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **SOURCE** Button

  Models with one display

  FM→AM→CD→USB→iPod→*Bluetooth*® Audio→Pandora®*→AUX

  Models with two displays

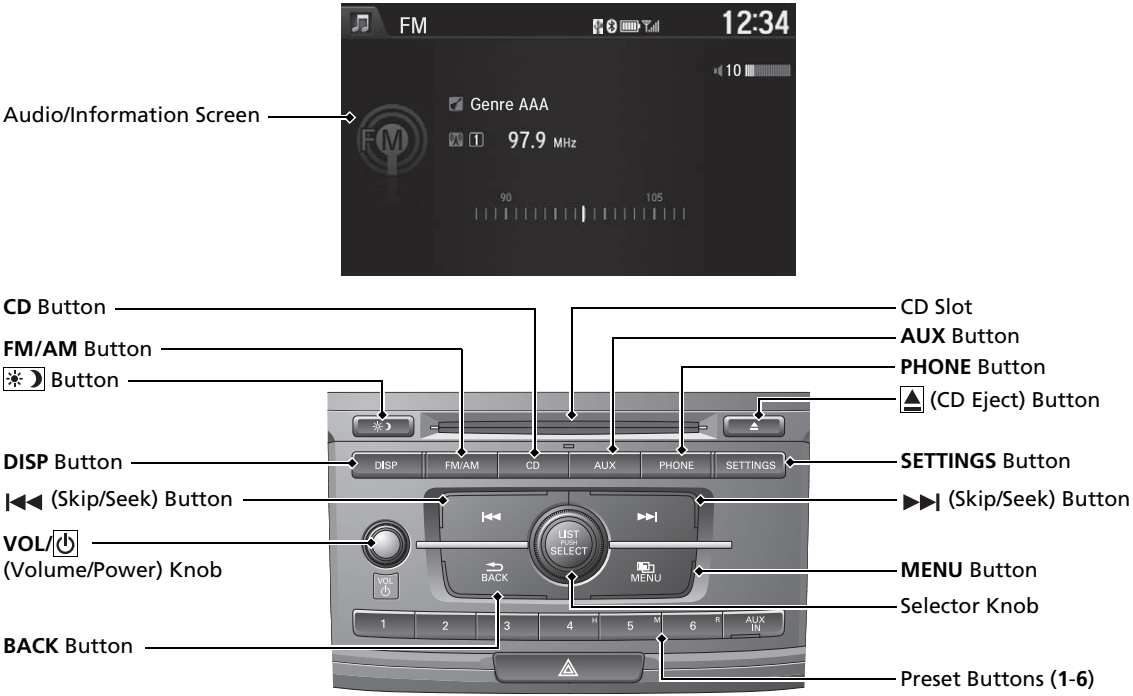
  FM→AM→SiriusXM®*→CD→USB→iPod→Pandora®*→*Bluetooth*® Audio→Audio Apps
- ◀ / ▶ Button

  Radio: Press to change the preset station.
  Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

  CD/USB device:
  Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  Press and hold to change a folder.

Audio System P. 192, 215

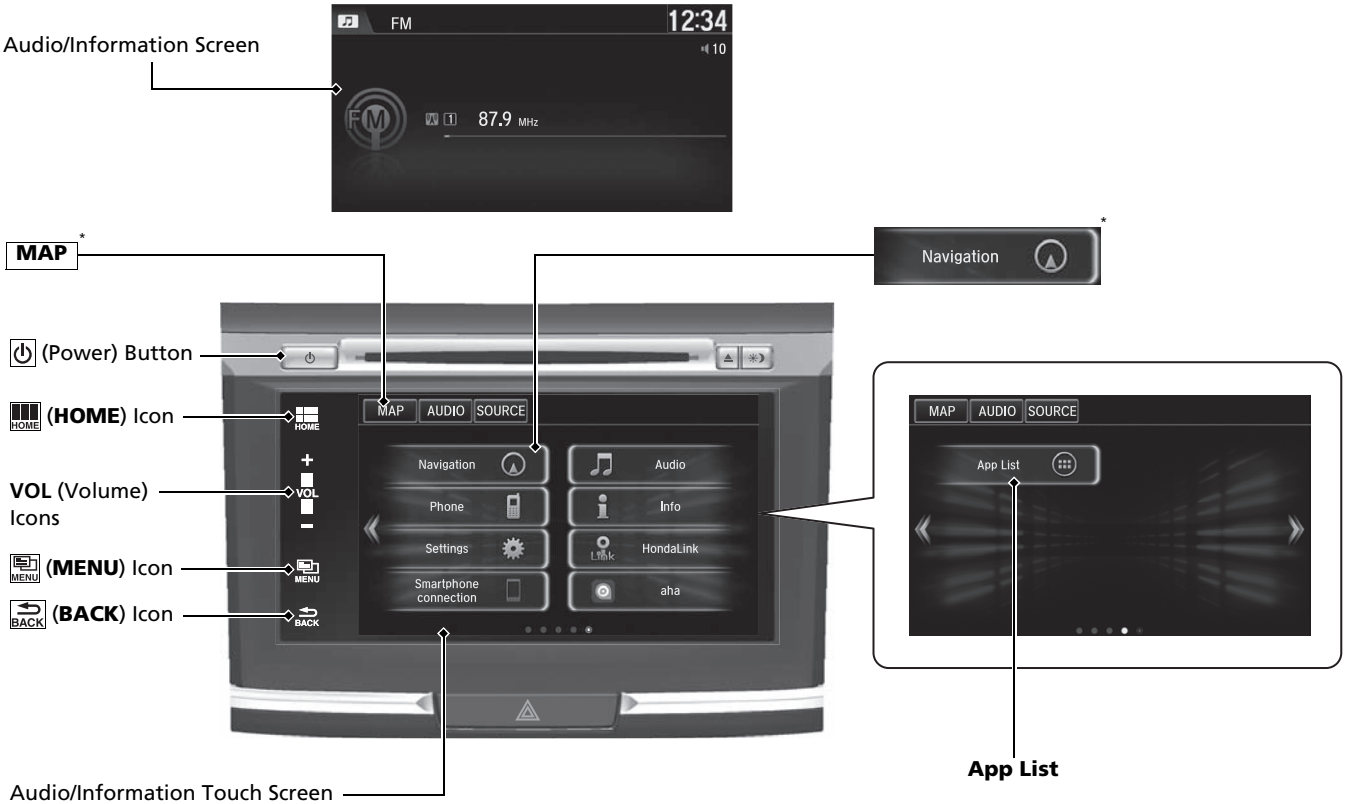
Models with one display P. 192



* Not available on all models

Models with two displays P. 215

For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual

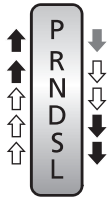


Driving P. 411

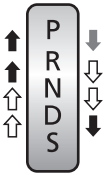
Manual Transmission* P. 438

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)* P. 430, 432

- Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.
- **Shifting**



Models without paddle shifter

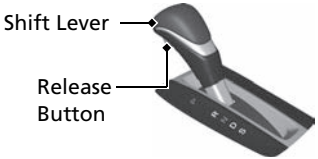


Models with paddle shifter

Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of P.

Press the release button to move the shift lever.

Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.



P **Park**
Turn off or start the engine. Transmission is locked.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

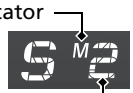
D **Drive**
- Normal driving.
- On models with paddle shifter, 7-speed mode can be used temporarily.

S **Drive (S)**
- Better acceleration.
- Increased engine braking.
- Going up or down hills.
- On models with paddle shifter, 7-speed manual shift mode can be used.

L **Low***
- Further increased engine braking.
- Going up or down hills.

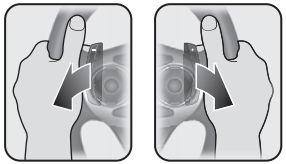
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode* P. 434

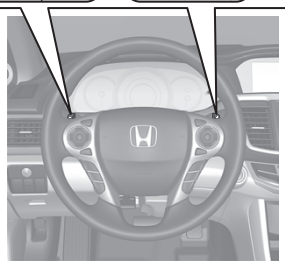
- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.



Shift Down − Paddle Shifter

Shift Up + Paddle Shifter





When the shift lever is in S

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission (CVT) to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

When the shift lever is in D

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission (CVT) to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.

* Not available on all models

Automatic Transmission* P. 436

- Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.
- **Shifting**

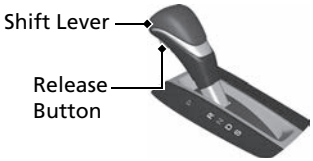
P **Park**
Turn off or start the engine.
Transmission is locked.

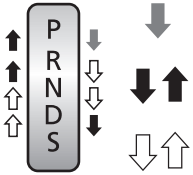
R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Normal driving.

S **Drive (S)**
- Automatically changing gears between 1st and 5th (5th gear is used only in at high speed).
- Used when towing a trailer in hilly terrain.
- Used to increase engine braking.





Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of P.

Press the release button to move the shift lever.

Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.

VSA® OFF Button P. 472

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To turn VSA® on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Cruise Control P. 442

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE***/ **MAIN*** button, then press the **–/SET** button once you have achieved the desired speed (above 25 mph or 40 km/h).

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) OFF Button*

P. 483

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS™ can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- To turn the CMBS™ on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

P. 475

- Detects a change in tire conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tire pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

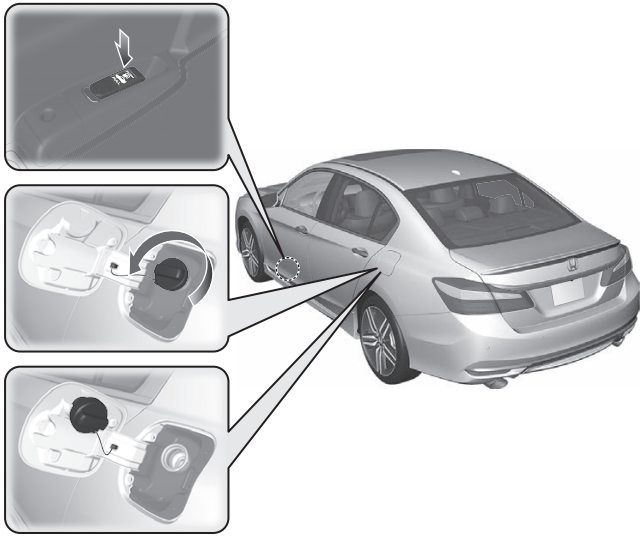
Refueling

P. 497

Fuel recommendation: Unleaded gasoline with a pump octane number 87 or higher required

Fuel tank capacity: 17.2 US gal (65 L)

1. Push the fuel fill door release handle.
2. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
3. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
4. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



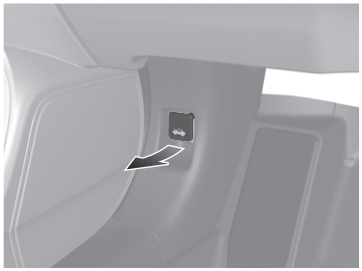
* Not available on all models

Maintenance P. 501

Under the Hood P. 513

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windshield washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid and clutch* fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the hood release handle under the corner of the dashboard.

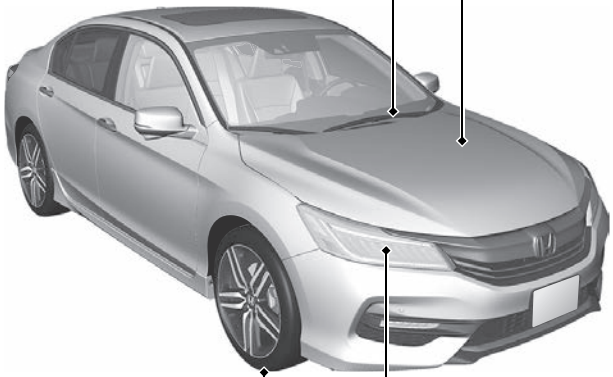


2. Locate the hood latch lever, pull the lever up, and lift up the hood.

3. When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 537

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield.



Tires P. 539

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

Lights P. 529

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected P. 557

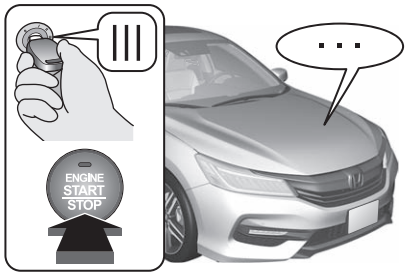
Flat Tire P. 559

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tire with the compact spare tire in the trunk.

Engine Won't Start

P. 565

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



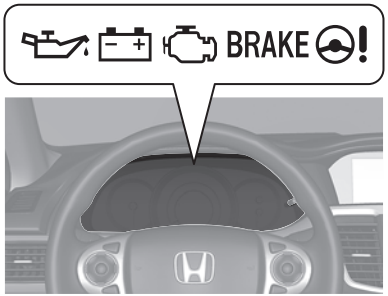
Overheating P. 572

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the engine cool down.

Indicators Come On

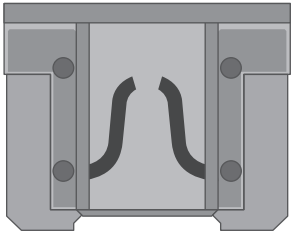
P. 574

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse P. 578

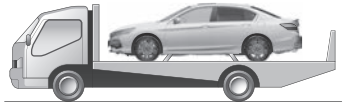
- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing

P. 582

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q Models without smart entry system

The ignition switch does not turn from 0 to I. Why?

Models with smart entry system*1

The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?

A

- The steering wheel may be locked.

Models without smart entry system

- Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.

Models with smart entry system*1

- Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button at the same time.

Q Models without smart entry system

The ignition switch does not turn from I to 0 and I cannot remove the key. Why?

Models with smart entry system*1

The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?

A The shift lever should be moved to P.

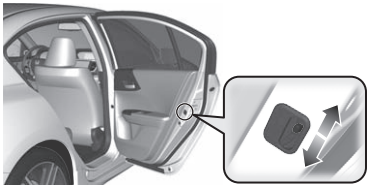
*1:Except U.S. automatic transmission/CVT models

Q Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

A This can occur when the ABS activates, and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, push the lever to the unlock position.



Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors using a remote transmitter?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:
- The key is left in the ignition switch*.
- The power mode* is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

A The beeper sounds when:
- Driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake lever is not fully released.

* Not available on all models

Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
Important Safety Precautions 28
Your Vehicle's Safety Features..... 30
Safety CheckList..... 31
Seat Belts
About Your Seat Belts..... 32
Fastening a Seat Belt..... 35
Seat Belt Inspection..... 38
Airbags
Airbag System Components..... 39
Types of Airbags 42
Front Airbags (SRS) 42
Side Airbags 46
Side Curtain Airbags 48
Airbag System Indicators..... 49
Airbag Care 51
Child Safety
Protecting Child Passengers 52
Safety of Infants and Small Children.....54
Safety of Larger Children 62
Exhaust Gas Hazard
Carbon Monoxide Gas..... 64
Safety Labels
Label Locations 65

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children ages 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some states, provinces and territories prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

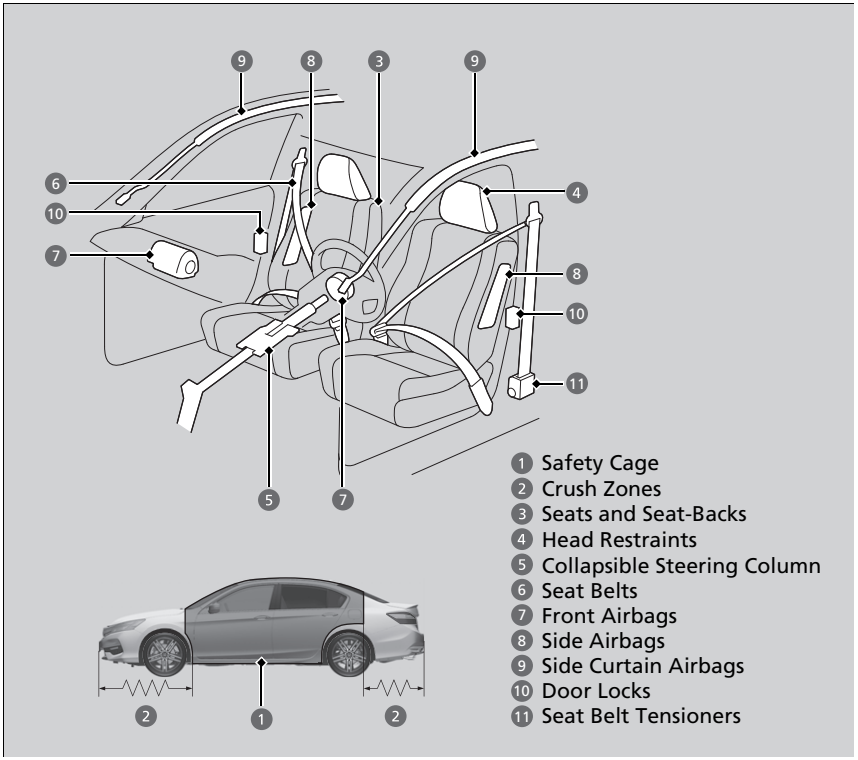
■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety CheckList

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

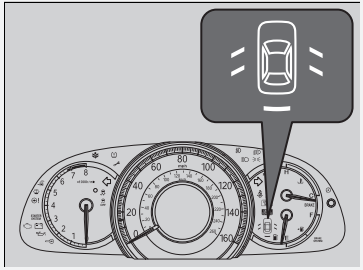
- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors are closed and locked. Locking the doors helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door.
  ➡ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 124
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 160
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions** P. 163
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 35
- Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child's age, height and weight.
  ➡ **Child Safety** P. 52

Safety CheckList

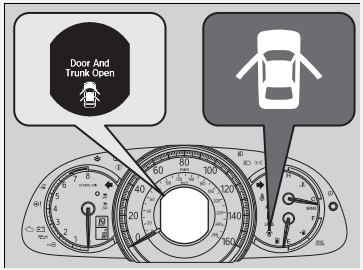
If the door and trunk open indicator is on, a door and/or the trunk is not completely closed. Close all doors and the trunk tightly until the indicator goes off.

➡ **Door and Trunk Open Indicator** P. 74

Models with information display



Models with multi-information display



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

➡ **Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 59

About Your Seat Belts

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

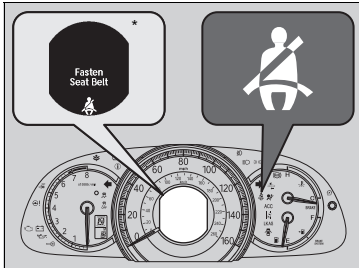
The emergency locking retractor may lock if you lean forward too quickly. Slower movements will allow the belt to extend fully without locking.

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

■ Seat Belt Reminder



Your vehicle monitors front seat belt use. If the ignition switch is turned to ON II *1 before the driver's seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. If the driver does not fasten the belt before the beeper stops, the indicator will remain on.

The beeper will also periodically sound and the indicator will blink while driving until the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are fastened.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

About Your Seat Belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON II *1.
When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound. The indicator also may not come on and the beeper may not sound when the occupant is not heavy enough to trigger the weight sensor. Such occupants (e.g., infants and smaller children) should be moved to the rear seat as a deploying front airbag likely will injure or kill them.

➡ **Protecting Child Passengers** P. 52

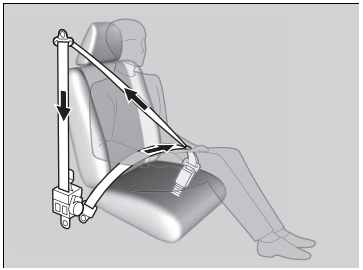
* Not available on all models

Continued

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

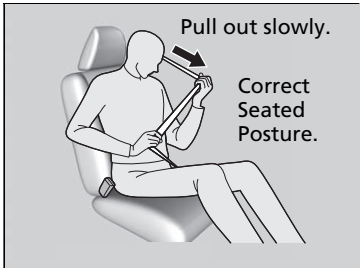
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once.
If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

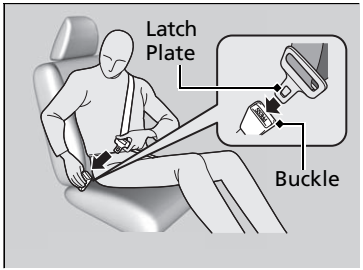
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

➡ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 160



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

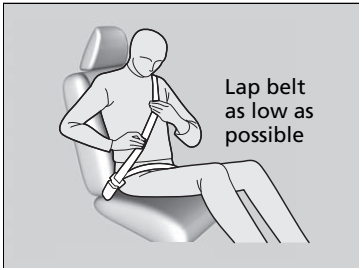
▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

Continued

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

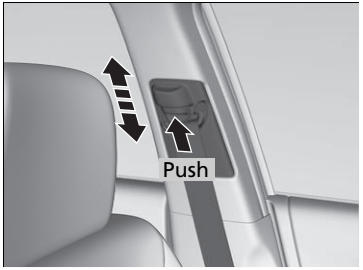
Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while holding the release button.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get caught by closing the door.

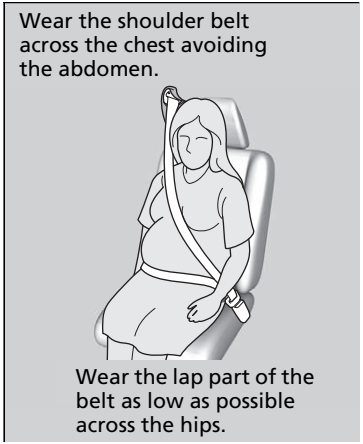
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

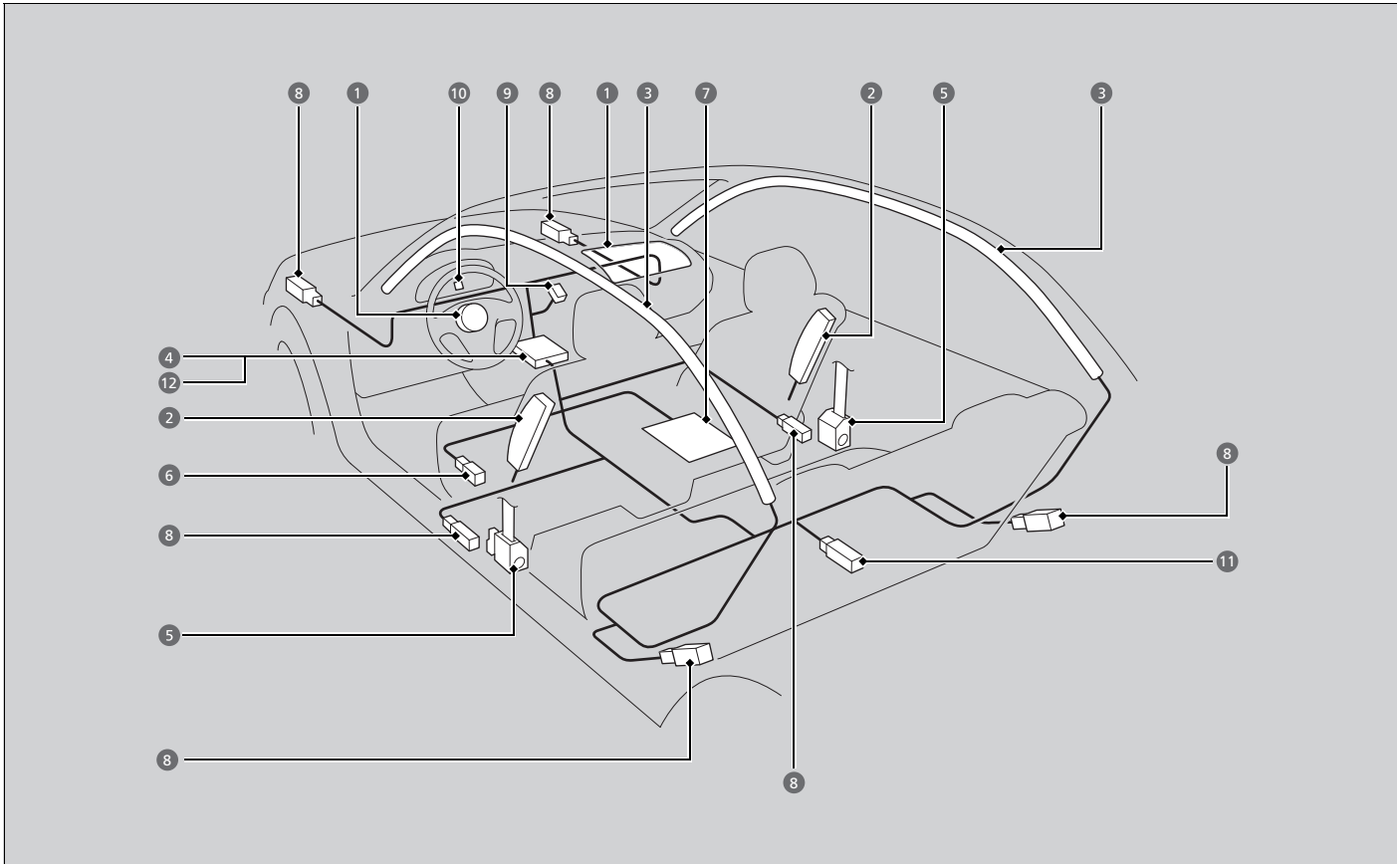
Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Airbag System Components



Continued

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. Both side curtain airbags are deployed in a rollover. The airbag system includes:

❶ Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

❷ Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

❸ Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

❹ An electronic control unit that continually monitors and can record information about the sensors, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in ON II *1.

❺ Automatic front seat belt tensioners. The driver's and front passenger's seat belts incorporate sensors that detect whether or not they are fastened.

❻ A driver's seat position sensor. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force.

❼ Weight sensors in the front passenger's seat. The front passenger's airbag will be turned off if the weight on the seat is 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child).

❽ Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

❾ An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.

❿ An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

⓫ Safing Sensor

⓬ A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbag.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

Dual-Stage, Multiple-Threshold Front Airbags (SRS)

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-stage, multiple-threshold front airbags (SRS).

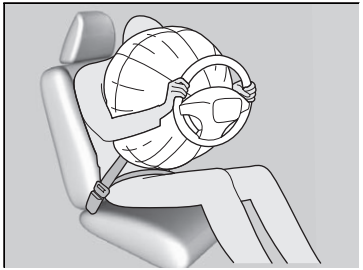
During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

Continued

How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and, in vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side airbags and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

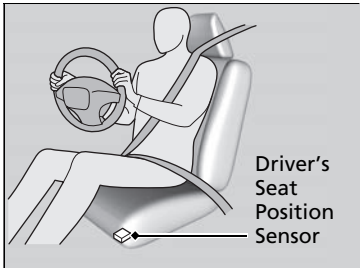
Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

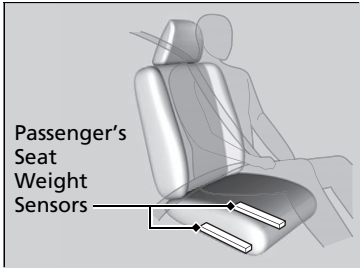
Advanced Airbags

Your front airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.



The driver's advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor.

If the seat is too far forward, the airbag inflates with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.



The passenger's advanced front airbag system has weight sensors.

Although we recommend against carrying an infant or small child in front, if the sensors detect the weight of a child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn off the passenger's front airbag.

Advanced Airbags

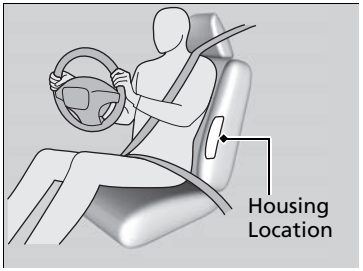
If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor, the SRS indicator will come on and the airbag will inflate with full (normal) force, regardless of the driver's seating position.

For both advanced front airbags to work properly:
- Do not spill any liquid on or under the seats.
- Do not put any object under the passenger's seat.
- Make sure any objects are positioned properly on the floor. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- All occupants should sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not place any cover over the passenger side dashboard.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

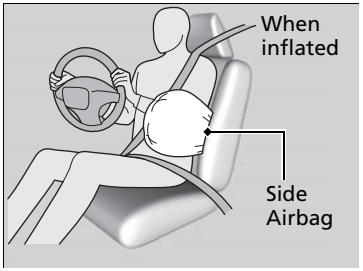
Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Make sure you and your front seat passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of a side airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag systems senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

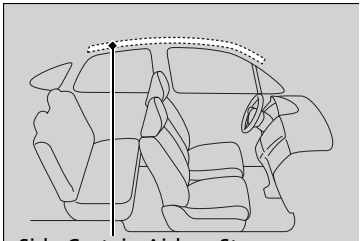
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact. The side curtain airbags equipped in this vehicle are also designed to help reduce the likelihood of partial and complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in crashes, particularly rollover crashes.

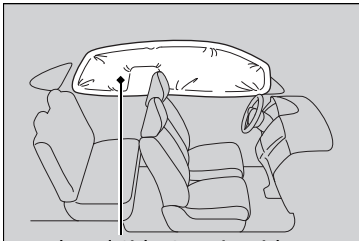
Housing Locations



Side Curtain Airbag Storage

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation



Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a rollover or a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Side Curtain Airbags

If the SRS control unit senses that your vehicle is about to rollover, it immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates both front seat belt tensioners.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the passenger seat.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts properly and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

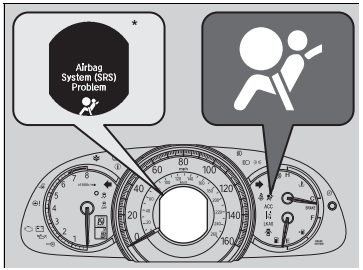
■ **When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision**

One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the multi-information display*.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ **When the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1**

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠WARNING

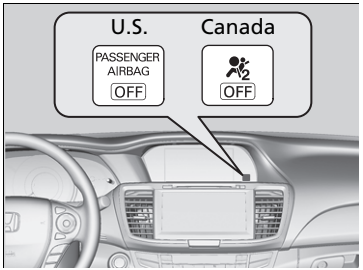
Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator



When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off. This occurs when the front passenger's weight sensors detect 65 lbs (29 kg) or less, the weight of an infant or small child, on the seat.

Infants and small children should always ride properly restrained in a back seat.

Child Safety P. 52

Objects placed on the seat can also cause the indicator to come on.

If the front passenger seat is empty, the passenger's front airbag will not deploy and the indicator will not come on.

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator

If the indicator comes on with no front passenger and no objects on the passenger's seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors, such as:

- An object hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- A child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat-back.
- A rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- The front seat or seat-back is forced back against an object on the seat or floor behind it.
- An object placed under the front passenger's seat.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and goes off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

■ Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting a dealer

This would likely disable the driver's seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger's seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact a Honda dealer, or for U.S. vehicles, American Honda Automobile Customer Service at 800-999-1009 and for Canadian vehicles, Honda Canada Customer Relations at 888-9-HONDA-9.

Airbag Care

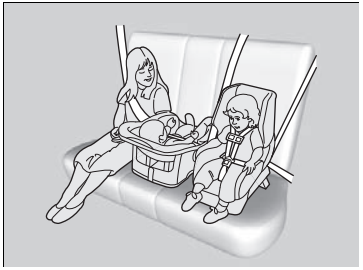
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the lap belt portion of the lap/shoulder belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

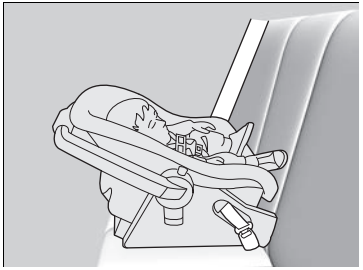
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

➔ **Safety Labels** P. 65

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the infant reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child seat

Child seats must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

➡ **Airbags** P. 39

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

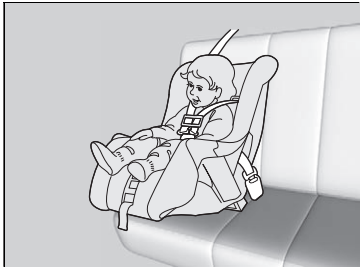
Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

Rear-facing child seats should never be installed in a forward facing position.

Always refer to the child seat manufacturer's instructions before installation.

Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and within the weight range indicated by the child seat manufacturer, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward-facing child seat.



Forward-facing child seat placement

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Continued

Protecting Smaller Children

WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren). Some have a rigid-type connector, while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer's use and care instructions as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner’s manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:

- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

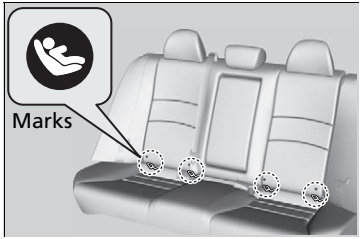
Selecting a Child Seat

Installation of a LATCH-compatible child seat is simple.

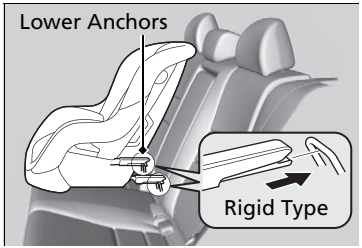
LATCH-compatible child seats have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

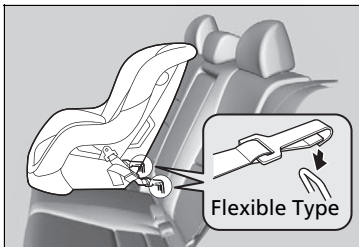
Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



1. Locate the lower anchors under the marks.

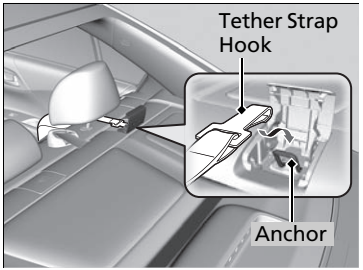




2. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat then attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.

▶ When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

Continued



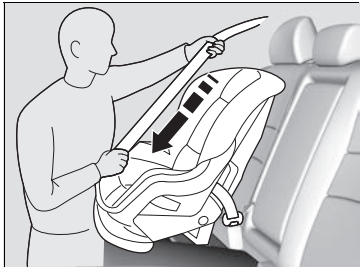
3. Open the tether anchor cover behind the head restraint.
4. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook onto the anchor.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.
6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the seat is properly secured to the vehicle. A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

1. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



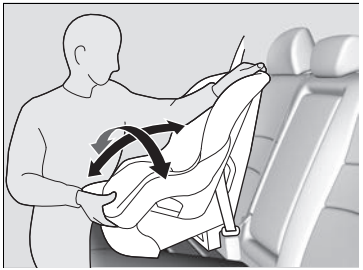
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt completely wind up into the retractor, then try to pull it out to make sure the retractor is locked.
   ▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 2 – 4.

5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
   ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

Continued

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

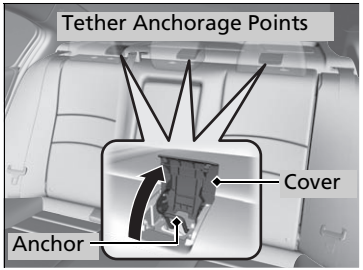


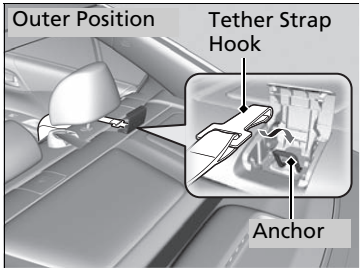
6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

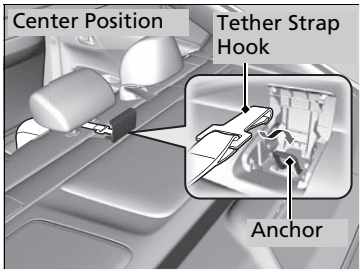
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

Adding Security with a Tether







A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear seating position. A child seat that is installed with a seat belt and comes with a tether can use the tether for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.
2. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook onto the anchor.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

Adding Security with a Tether

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder seat belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is available.

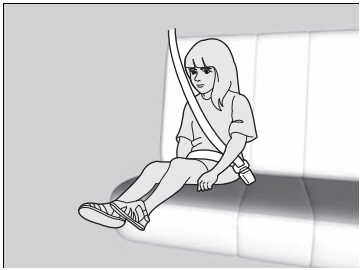
Safety of Larger Children

Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats

If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in a rear seating position. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

Protecting Larger Children-Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states and Canadian provinces and territories require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g. 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state or province, or territory where you intend to drive.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the trunk open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the trunk open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.
Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

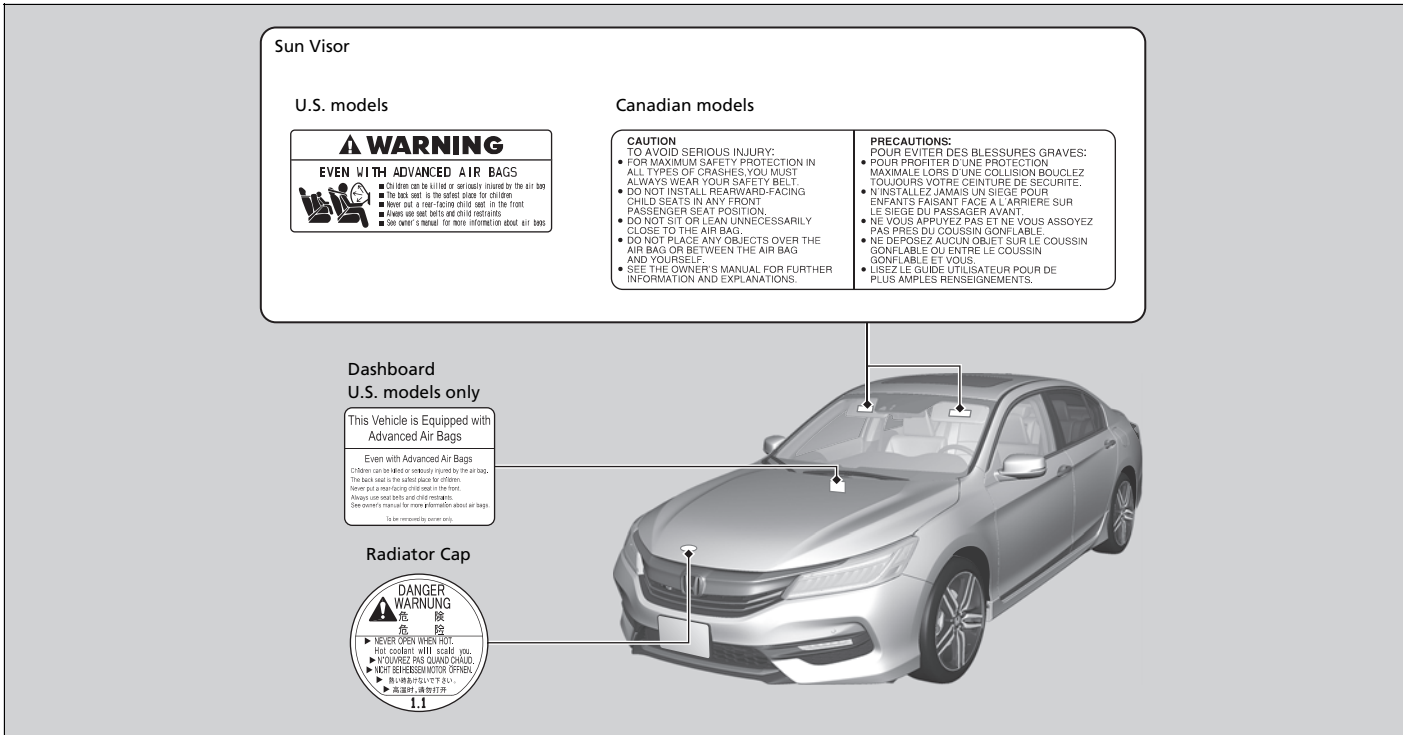
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed.
Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.



Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

Indicators 68
Information Display Warning and Information Messages* 85
Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages* 87
Gauges and Displays
Gauges 95
Information Display* 96
Multi-Information Display* 99

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
U.S. BRAKE Canada (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. • Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. • Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. • Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 576 • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On** P. 576	WARNING: Brake Fluid Low Brake System Problem Release Parking Brake
U.S. BRAKE SYSTEM Canada (Amber)	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	Brake System Problem

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Immediately stop in a safe place. ➡ **If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On** P. 574	Engine Oil Low
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off either when the engine starts or after several seconds if the engine did not start. If "readiness codes" have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	• Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems. ➡ **Testing of Readiness Codes** P. 591 • **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Blinks while driving** - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer. ➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 575	Emissions System Problem
	Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the battery is not charging.	• **Comes on while driving** - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption. ➡ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 574	Battery Charging Problem

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
Models with information display Models with multi-information display	Shift Lever Position Indicator*	• Indicates the current shift lever position.	➔ **Shifting** P. 430, 432, 436	—
Models with information display Models with multi-information display	**M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/ Shift Indicator*	• Comes on when 7-speed manual shift mode is applied.	➔ **7-Speed Manual Shift Mode** P. 434	—

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
Models with information display Models with multi-information display	Transmission Indicator*	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• **Blinks while driving** - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 33	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 2.6 U.S. gal./9.7 Liter left). • Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• **Comes on** - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. • **Blinks** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	Fuel Low Fuel Gauge System Problem
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 481	Anti-Lock Brake System Problem
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental restraint system - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	Airbag System (SRS) Problem

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Blinks when VSA® is active. • Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system or hill start assist system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System** P. 471	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) Problem Hill Start Assist Problem
OFF	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when you deactivate VSA®.	➡ **VSA® OFF Button** P. 472	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
Models with information display Models with multi-information display	Door and Trunk Open Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds if you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if any door or the trunk is not completely closed. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door or the trunk is opened while driving.	• Goes off when all doors and the trunk are closed.	Door And Trunk Open
	Parking Sensor System Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.	• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.	—
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 576	Power Steering System (EPS) Problem

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1 and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tires' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tires are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated. ➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 475	
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tire is temporarily installed.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tire repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	System Message Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the multi-information display appears at the same time.	• While the indicator is on, press the ▲ⓘ/▼ (information) button to see the message again. • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the multi-information display. Take the appropriate action for the message. • The multi-information display does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the ▲ⓘ/▼ button is pressed.	—
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately. ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 531, 533, 534	—
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in **AUTO** when the exterior lights are on.	• If you remove the key from the ignition switch*1 while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the fog lights are on.	—	—
	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1, pull the key out, and then insert the key and turn it to ON II*1 again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.	—
Indicator	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	➡ **Security System Alarm** P. 132	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	ECON Mode Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when you press the **ECON** button.	➔ **ECON Button** P. 441	ECON On
CRUISE MAIN	**CRUISE MAIN** Indicator*	• Comes on when you press the **CRUISE** button.	➔ **Cruise Control** P. 442	—
CRUISE CONTROL	**CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator*	• Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control.	➔ **Cruise Control** P. 442	—
	Washer Level Indicator*	• Comes on when the washer fluid gets low.	• Refill the washer fluid. ➔ **Refilling Window Washer Fluid** P. 528	—
	Maintenance Minder Indicator*	• Comes on when the scheduled maintenance is due soon.	➔ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 505	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Smart Entry System Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON. • Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the smart entry system or push button starting system.	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	Keyless Access System Problem Keyless Start System Problem
U.S. STARTER SYSTEM Canada	Starter System Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if the starter system has a problem.	• As a temporary measure, press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—
	Light Control Indicator*	• Comes on if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system or low beam headlights*.	• **Comes on while driving** - Turn the lights on manually and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Auto High-Beam Indicator (Green)*	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.	➡ **Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)*** P. 147	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on if there is a problem with the auto high-beam.	• Manually operate the headlight switch. • If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.	—
		• Comes on when the area around the camera on the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, etc.	• Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • If the indicator does not go off after cleaning the lens, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the RDM system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445	
			• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with ACC.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	Adaptive Cruise Control Problem ACC
		• Comes on if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. • May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) • ACC has been automatically canceled.	• When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dear if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover.	Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) Indicator (White)*	• Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button.	➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 447	—
		• Comes on if the temperature inside the camera is too high. • ACC has been automatically canceled.	• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. • **Goes off** - The camera has been cooled down. Pressing the **MAIN** button can resume the system. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445 ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 447	Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	Lane Keep Assist Problem LKAS
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (White)*	• Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button.	➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*** P. 464	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS™. A multi-information display message appears for five seconds. • Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS™.	• **Stays on constantly without the CMBS™ off** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 483	Collision Mitigation Braking System OFF Collision Mitigation System Problem
		• Comes on when the CMBS™ system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445	Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield
			• When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 483	Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed
			• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445	Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Information Display Warning and Information Messages*

The following messages appear only on the information display.

Message	Condition	Explanation
CHECK FUEL CAP	• Appears when the fuel fill cap is loose or is not installed.	➡ **Check/Tighten Fuel Cap Message** P. 575
CHECK CHARGE SYSTEM	• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Models with smart entry system

Message	Condition	Explanation
Automatic transmission/CVT models POWER IS ON SHIFT TO P	• Appears if you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P.	• Push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice after moving the shift lever to P.
POWER IS ON	• Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	—
U.S. manual transmission models Canadian models 1-PUSH START 2-TURN WHEEL	• Appears when the steering wheel is locked.	• Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button at the same time.
NO KEY	• Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the smart entry remote inside the vehicle.	• Disappears when you bring the smart entry remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.
KEY BATT	• Appears when the smart entry remote's battery becomes weak.	• Replace the battery as soon as possible. ➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 549

Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages*

The following messages appear only on the multi-information display. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ (information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the fuel fill cap is loose or is not installed.	➡ **Check/Tighten Fuel Cap Message** P. 575
	• Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. ▶ Consequently, **Maintenance Due Now** and **Maintenance Past Due** follow.	➡ **Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display** P. 510
	• Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.	➡ **Overheating** P. 572
	• Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.	• **Appears while driving** - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears if there is a problem with the low beam headlights.	• **Appears while driving** - The low beam headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
Models with auto high-beam High Beam Support System Problem	• Appears if there is a problem with the auto high-beam.	• Manually operate the headlight switch. • If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.
Models with auto high-beam High Beam Support System Cannot Operate: Clean Windshield	• Appears when the area around the camera on the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, etc.	• Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • If the message does not disappear after cleaning the lens, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Models with parking sensor system Parking Sensor System Problem	• Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system. The beeper sounds.	• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.
Canadian models Washer Fluid Low	• Appears when the washer fluid is low.	• Refill the washer fluid. ➔ **Refilling Window Washer Fluid** P. 528

Models without smart entry system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY I from ON II. (The driver's door is closed.)	—
	• Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY I.	• Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0, then remove the key.
	• Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK 0.	• Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Continued

Models with smart entry system

Message	Condition	Explanation
To Start Engine: Brake + Push	• Appears after you unlock and open the driver's door.	➔ **Starting the Engine** P. 423
U.S. manual transmission models Canadian models To Unlock Wheel: Push + Rotate	• Appears when the steering wheel is locked.	• Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
Shift To Park	• Appears if you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P.	• Move the shift lever to P. The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.
Accessory Mode	• Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	—

Models with smart entry system

Message	Condition	Explanation
To Switch Vehicle Off: Push Twice	• Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	• Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Keyless Remote Not Detected	• Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the smart entry remote inside the vehicle.	• Disappears when you bring the smart entry remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. ➡ **Smart Entry Remote Reminder** P. 142
Keyless Remote Battery Low	• Appears when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak.	• Replace the battery as soon as possible. ➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 549
To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button	• Appears if the smart entry remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times.	• Bring the smart entry remote in front of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to be touched with. ➡ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 566
To Switch Accessory On: Push	• Appears three seconds after the **To Start Engine: Brake + Push** message appears.	➡ **Changing the Power Mode** P. 140
	• Appears three seconds after you bring the smart entry remote in front of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button when **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** appears. **To Start Engine: Brake + Push** appears sequentially.	➡ **Changing the Power Mode** P. 140

Continued

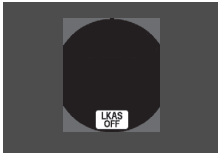
Message	Condition	Explanation
Must Stop And Shift To Park To Change Settings	• Appears while you are customizing the settings and the shift lever is moved out of P.	➔ **Customized Features** P. 103
Charging System Problem	• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery. • Appears when the battery is not charging.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **Checking the Battery** P. 548 • **Appears along with the battery charging system indicator** - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger to reduce electricity consumption. ➔ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 574
Starter System Problem STARTER SYSTEM	• Appears when the starter system has a problem.	• As a temporary measure, press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
ACC OFF	• Appears for about three seconds when ACC has been automatically canceled.	• You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves. Press the **RES/+** button. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 447
BRAKE	• Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you.	• Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.). ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 447 ➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 483

* Not available on all models

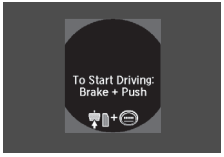
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.).	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message appears again after you cleaned the area around the camera.
	• Appears if the temperature inside the camera is too high. • ACC/LKAS has been automatically canceled.	• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. • **Goes off** - The camera has been cooled down. Pressing the **MAIN/LKAS** button can resume the system. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445 ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 447 ➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*** P. 464
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) • Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected line. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.	• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. • The color of either line changes from white to amber as the vehicle gets closer to that side of the lane line. ➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*** P. 464
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System • Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected line. When you selected **Warning Only** - The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected line. When you selected **Normal** or **Wide** - The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected line. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.	• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. • The color of either line changes from white to amber as the vehicle gets closer to that side of the lane line. ➔ **Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*** P. 460 • You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. **Normal**, **Wide**, and **Warning Only** can be selected. ➔ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

* Not available on all models

Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.
	• Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA®, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action. ➔ **Indicators** P. 68

Models with remote engine starter

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when you unlock and open the driver's door while the engine is running by smart entry remote.	➔ **Remote Engine Start*** P. 425

* Not available on all models

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada).

Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

Temperature Gauge

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

Overheating P. 572

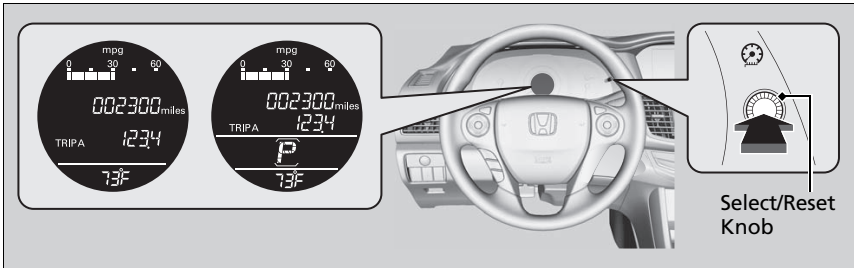
*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Information Display*

The information display shows the odometer, trip meter, engine oil life and maintenance service item codes, and other gauges.

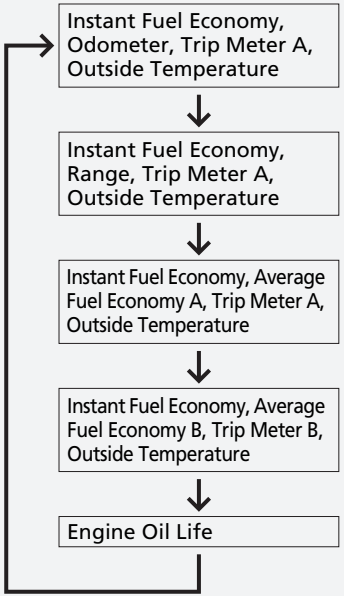
Switching the Display

Press the (Select/Reset) knob to change the display.



Switching the Display

Each time you press the knob, the information display changes as follows:



Some of the items on the information display also appear on the audio/information screen. They also change along with the information display changes while the fuel consumption is shown.

* Not available on all models

Odometer

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada). The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada).

Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

➡ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 505

Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the knob.

Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 298, 316

Continued

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to ± 5°F or ± 3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.

2. Press and hold the (Select/Reset) knob for 10 seconds or more while the outside temperature is shown on the information display.

▶ The information display goes into temperature adjustment mode. The display starts showing from -5°F to +5°F (U.S.) or -3°C to +3°C (Canada).

3. Release the knob when the right adjustment amount is shown.

▶ The adjustment is complete.

Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

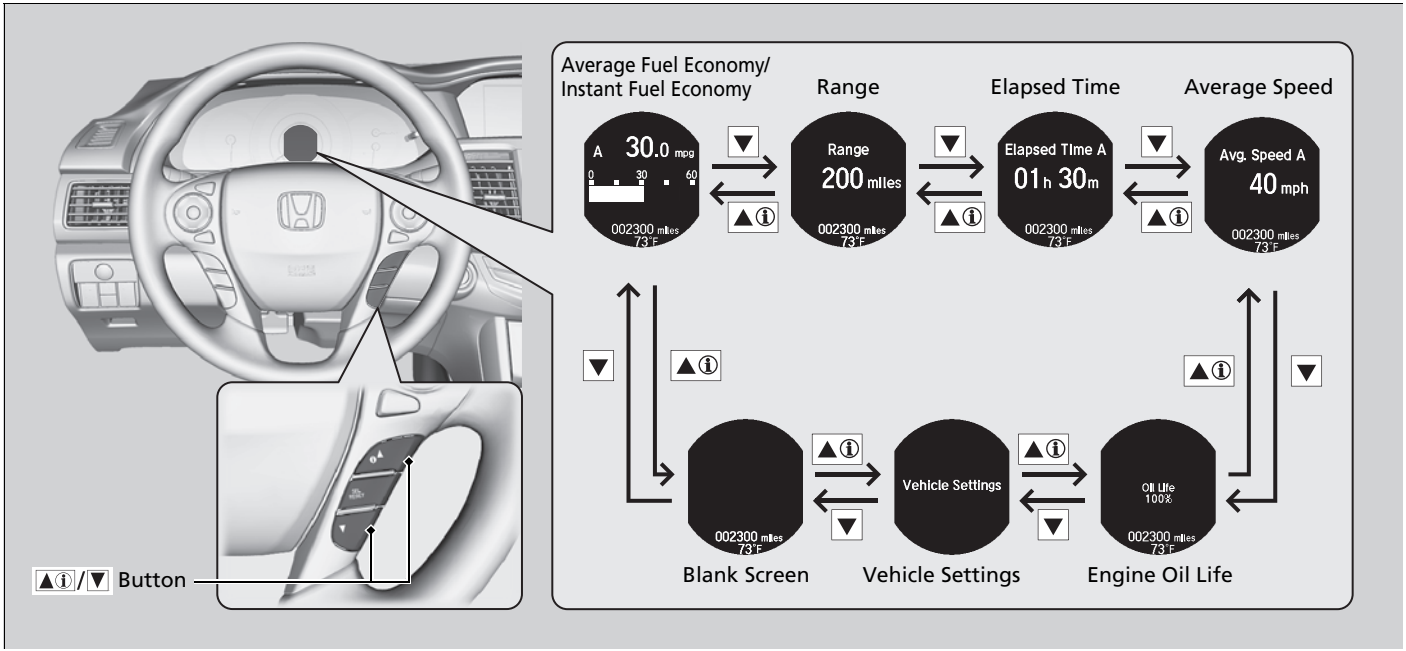
Multi-Information Display*

The multi-information display shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.
It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

Switching the Display

Main displays

Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ (information) button to change the display.

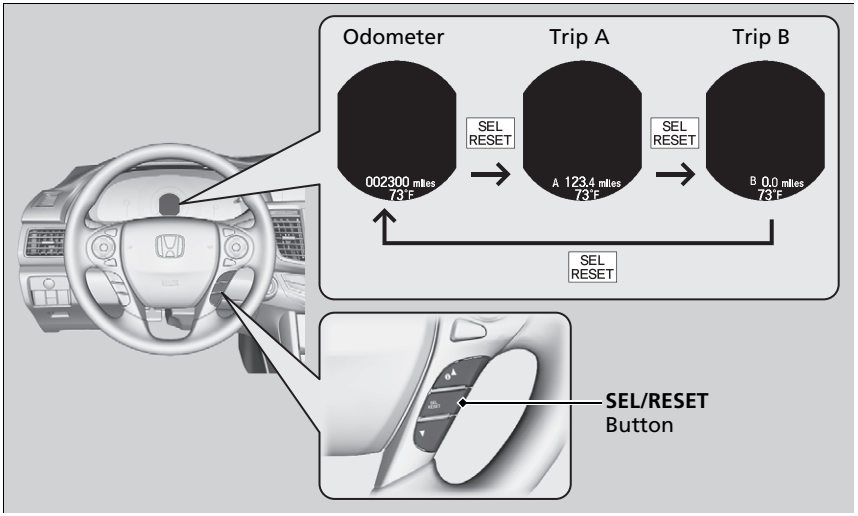


* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Lower displays

Press the **SEL/RESET** button to change the display.



Odometer

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada). The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Continued

Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.

Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

Average Speed

Shows the average speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada) since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada).

Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

➔ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 505

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to ±5°F or ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the multi-information display's customized features to correct the temperature.

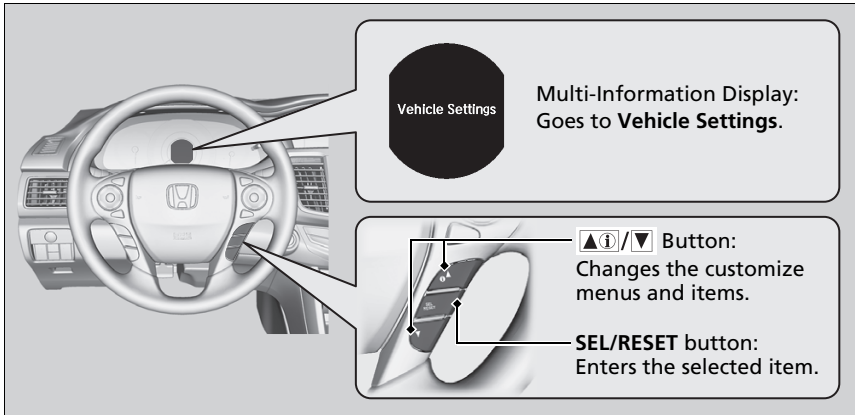
➔ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

Customized Features

Use the multi-information display to customize certain features.

How to customize

Select the **Vehicle Settings** screen by pressing the ▲ⓘ/▼ button while the ignition switch is in ON II*1, and the vehicle is at a complete stop.
Press the **SEL/RESET** button.



*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Customized Features

To customize other features, press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button.

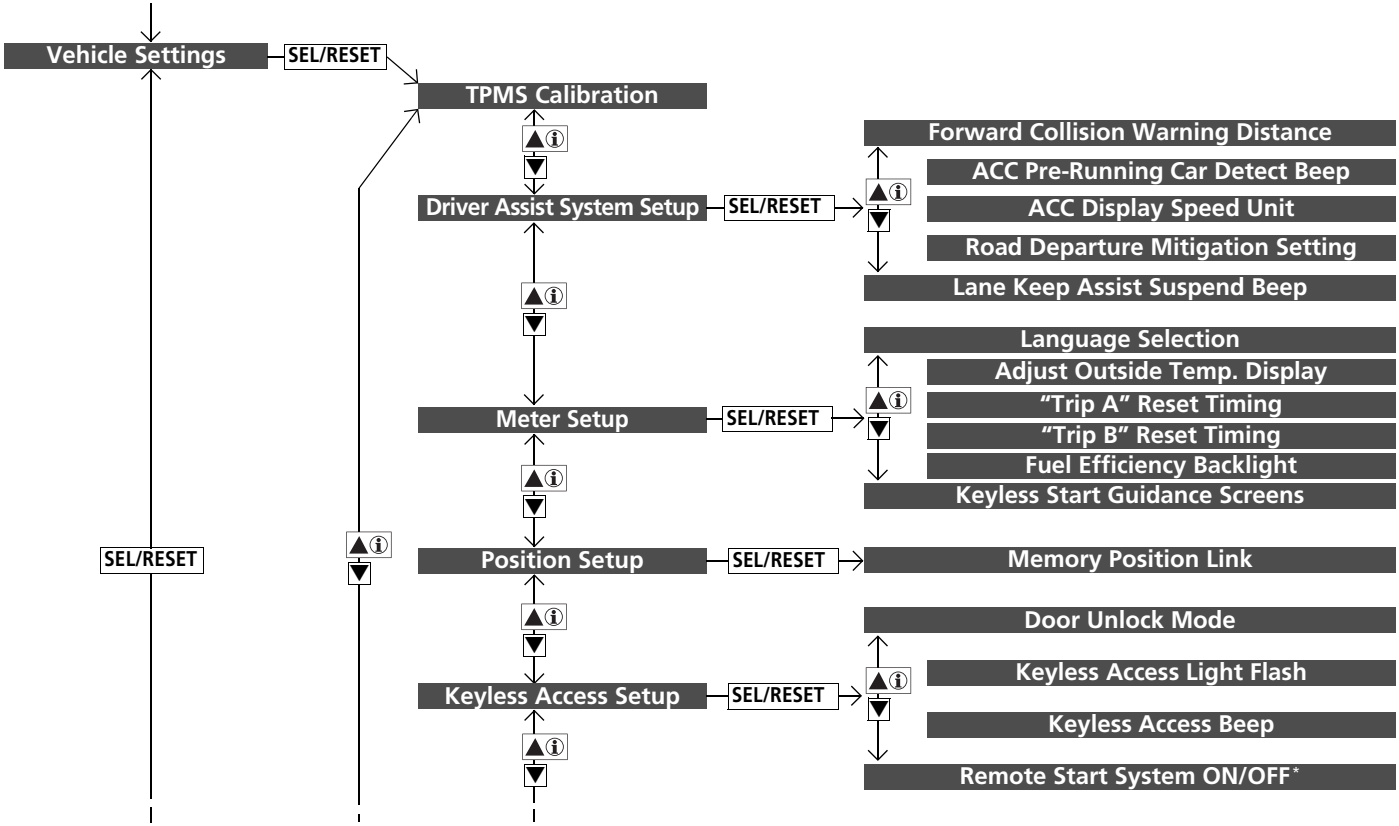
➡ **List of customizable options** P. 106
➡ **Example of customization settings** P. 110

Customization is possible when you see the driver's ID (**Driver 1** or **Driver 2**) on the screen.
The driver's ID indicates which remote transmitter you have used to unlock the driver's door. The customized settings are recalled every time you unlock the driver's door with that remote.

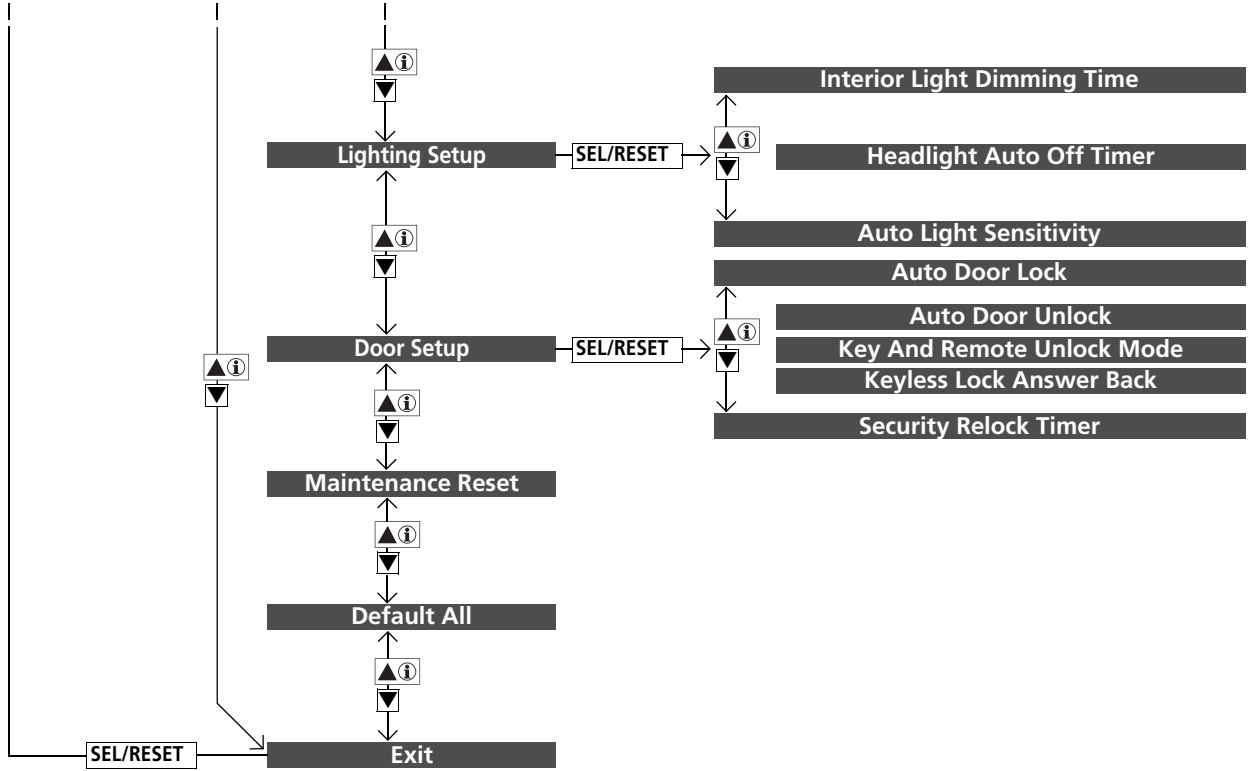
When you customize settings: Shift to P

■ Customization flow

Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button.



* Not available on all models


Lighting Setup
SEL/RESET
Interior Light Dimming Time
Headlight Auto Off Timer
Auto Light Sensitivity
Door Setup
SEL/RESET
Auto Door Lock
Auto Door Unlock
Key And Remote Unlock Mode
Keyless Lock Answer Back
Security Relock Timer
Maintenance Reset
Default All
SEL/RESET
Exit

Continued

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
TPMS Calibration	—	Calibrates the TPMS.	**Cancel/Calibrate**
Driver Assist System Setup	**Forward Collision Warning Distance**	Changes at which distance the CMBS™ alerts.	**Long/Normal***1**/Short**
	ACC Pre-Running Car Detect Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range.	**On/Off***1
	ACC Display Speed Unit	Changes the ACC display speed unit.	**mph***1**/km/h** (U.S.) **mph/km/h***1 (Canada)
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	**Normal***1**/Wide/Warning Only**
	Lane Keep Assist Suspend Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**On/Off***1

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	**Language Selection**	Changes the displayed language.	**English**[*1]**/French/Spanish**
	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-5°F ~ ±0°F**[*1] **~ +5°F** (U.S.) **-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C** (Canada)
	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	**With Refuel/IGN Off/ Manually Reset**[*1]
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	**With Refuel/IGN Off/ Manually Reset**[*1]
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Keyless Start Guidance Screens	Displays the push button start guidance when conditions are met to change power mode.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
Driving Position Setup	**Memory Position Link**	Changes the driver's seat position to a stored setting.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Access Setup	**Door Unlock Mode**	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	**Driver Door Only*1/All Doors**
	Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to blink when you unlock/lock the doors.	**On*1/Off**
	Keyless Access Beep	Sets the beeper sound or not when you grab either front door handle.	**On*1/Off**
	Remote Start System ON/OFF*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
Lighting Setup	**Interior Light Dimming Time**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec/30sec*1/15sec**
	Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec/30sec/15sec*1/0sec**
	Auto Light Sensitivity	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	**Max/High/Mid*1/Low/Min**

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

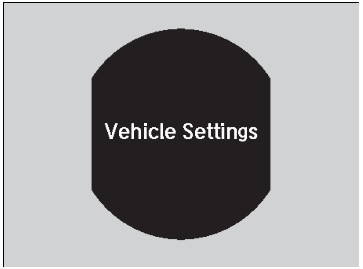
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	**Auto Door Lock**	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed*1/Shift from P/Off**
	Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	**All Doors When Driver's Door Opens*1/All Doors When Shifted To Park/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off**
	Key And Remote Unlock Mode	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote or built-in key.	**Driver Door*1/ All Doors**
	Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**On*1/Off**
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90sec/60sec/30sec*1**
Maintenance Reset	—	Resets/Cancels the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service.	**Cancel/Reset**
Default All	—	Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	**Cancel/Set**

*1: Default Setting

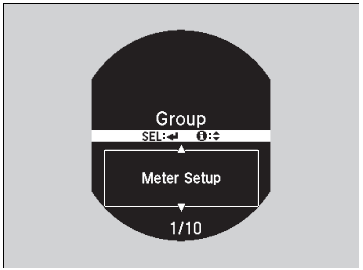
Continued

■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **With Refuel** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manually Reset**.

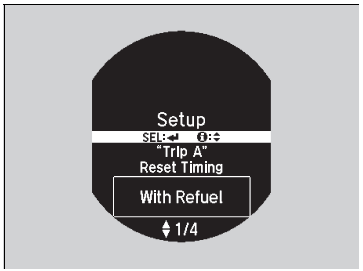


1. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

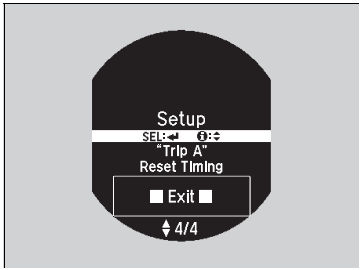


2. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
   ▶ **Language Selection** appears first in the display.

4. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **With Refuel**, **IGN Off**, **Manually Reset**, or **Exit**.



5. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button and select **With Refuel**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
▶ The **With Refuel Setup** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.



6. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button until **Exit** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock 114
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key Types and Functions 116
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength* ... 118
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 119
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 124
Childproof Door Locks 126
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 127
Opening and Closing the Trunk..... 128
Security System
Immobilizer System 132
Security System Alarm..... 132
Opening and Closing the Windows..... 135
Opening and Closing the Moonroof*..... 138
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
Ignition Switch* 139
ENGINE START/STOP Button* 140
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison 143
Turn Signals 144
Light Switches..... 144
Fog Lights* 146
Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)* 147
Daytime Running Lights 150
Wipers and Washers 151
Brightness Control 153
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button 154
Driving Position Memory System* 155
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 157
Adjusting the Mirrors
Interior Rearview Mirror 158
Power Door Mirrors 159
Adjusting the Seats 160
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items 168
Climate Control System
Using Automatic Climate Control 180
Synchronized Mode 182
Automatic Climate Control Sensors... 183

* Not available on all models

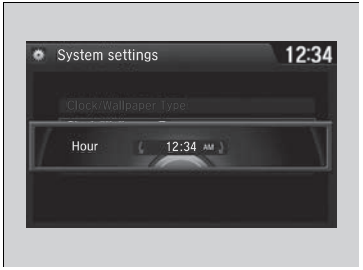
Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch is in ON II *1.

Adjusting the Time

Models with one display

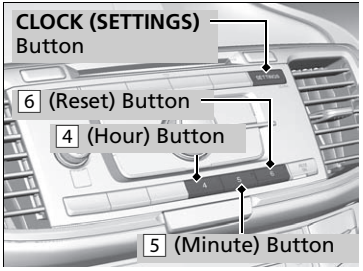
Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Rotate to change hour, then press .
4. Rotate to change minute, then press .

Models with one display

Using the SETTINGS button



1. Press and hold the **CLOCK (SETTINGS)** button until the clock display blinks.
2. Press Preset 4 (Hour) or 5 (Minute) to adjust the time.
3. Press the **CLOCK** button again to set the time.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Adjusting the Clock

Models with one display

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 298, 316

You can turn the clock display on and off.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 298, 316

Using the SETTINGS button

To set the time to the nearest hour: Press and hold the **CLOCK** button until the clock display blinks, then press the 6 (Reset) button.

Depending on the displayed time, the clock sets forward or backward.
Example:
1:06 will reset to 1:00
1:53 will reset to 2:00

Models with two displays

■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information touch screen

1. Select HOME, then select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Adjust the hours and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
4. Select **OK** to set the time.

Using the Settings menu on the audio/information touch screen

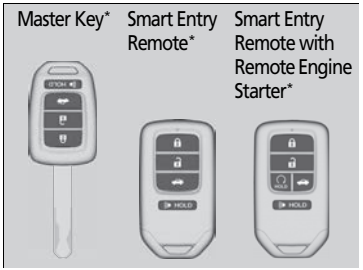
Models with two displays

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

Key Types and Functions

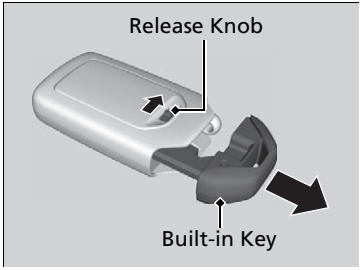
This vehicle comes with the following keys:

Master Keys



Use the key to start and stop the engine, to lock and unlock the doors and to open the trunk. You can also use the remote transmitter or smart entry system* to lock and unlock the doors and to open the trunk.

Smart entry remote*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull it out while sliding the release knob. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the smart entry remote until it clicks.

Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 132

The keys contain precision electronics.
Adhere to the following advice to prevent damage to the electronics:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

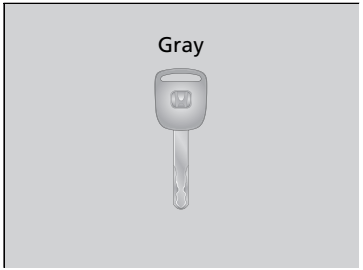
Models with remote engine starter

You can remotely start the engine using the smart entry remote.

➡ **Remote Engine Start*** P. 425

 * Not available on all models

Valet Key*

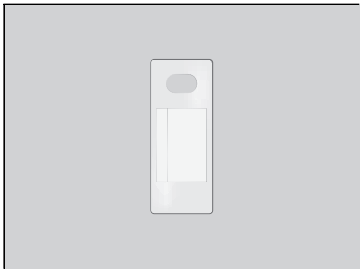


Can be used to start and stop the engine, and lock and unlock driver's door.

Valet Key*

When you need to leave a key with a third party, leave the valet key.

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the smart entry remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the trunk, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors, opening the trunk, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the smart entry remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the smart entry remote.

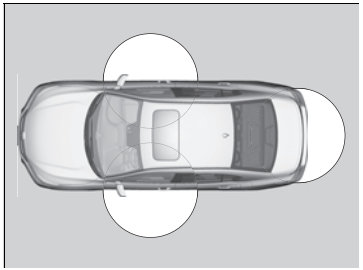
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength*

Communication between the smart entry remote and the vehicle consumes the smart entry remote's battery.
Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the smart entry remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

* Not available on all models

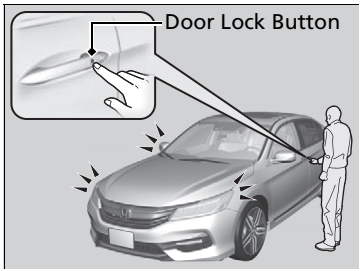
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*



When you carry the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the trunk. You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle. You can open the trunk within about 32 inches (80 cm) radius from the trunk release button.

■ Locking the doors and the trunk



Press the door lock button on the front door.

▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors lock; and the security system sets.

Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the smart entry remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- You cannot unlock the door by gripping the handle after two seconds of unlocking it.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the smart entry remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The smart entry remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 549

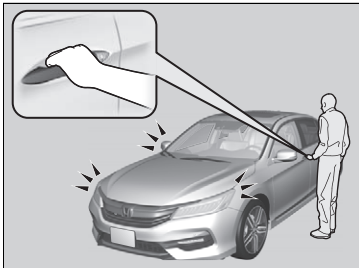
You can customize the door lock mode and keyless lock acknowledgement setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

* Not available on all models

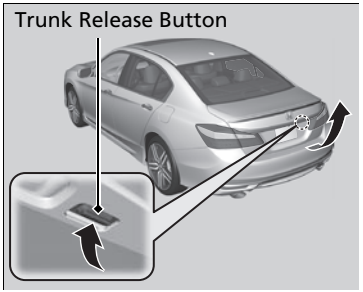
Continued

■ Unlocking the vehicle



Grab the driver's door handle:
- ▶ The driver's door unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:
- ▶ All the doors unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press the trunk release button:
- ▶ The trunk unlocks and opens.

➡ **Using the Trunk Release Button*** P. 129

Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

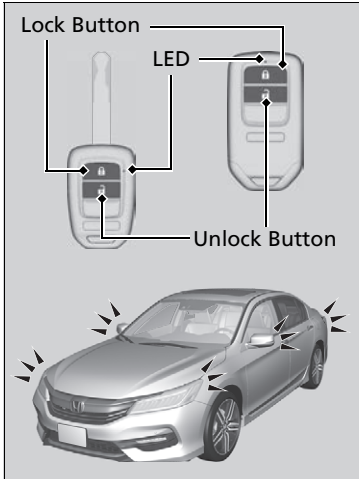
If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle, the doors will automatically relock.

The light flash, beep and unlock settings can be customized using the multi-information display*, audio/information screen* or audio/information touch screen*.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

* Not available on all models

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.
You can change the relock timer setting.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior lights come on when you press the unlock button.
No doors opened: The lights fade out after 30 seconds.
Doors relocked with the remote: The lights go off immediately.
➡ **Interior Lights** P. 168

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

Models without smart entry system

The remote transmitter will not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter or smart entry system only when the power mode in VEHICLE OFF.

All models

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

Continued

■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

Twice:

▶ The remaining doors unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

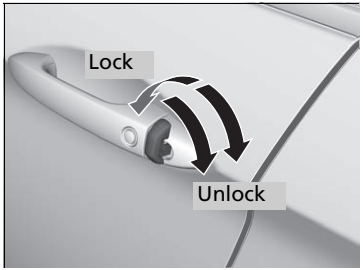
If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 549

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

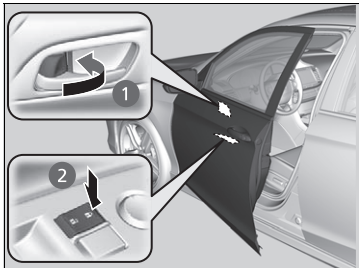
➡ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key



Fully insert the key and turn it.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key



Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ❶ or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ❷, and close the door.

▶ The doors cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch*1, or the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.

Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with a key, all the other doors lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors.

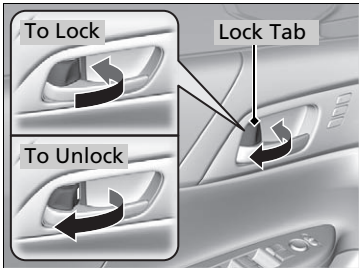
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.
Make sure you have the key in your hand before locking the door to prevent it from being locked in the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

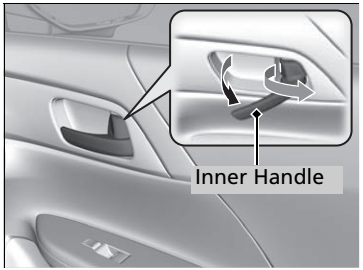
■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.
When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.

▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

To avoid all the doors to be unlocked, use the lock tab on the driver's door to unlock, then lock again before opening the door.

▶ This setting works for one time only. If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the **Auto Door Unlock** setting to **Off** using the multi-information display*, audio/information screen* or audio/information touch screen*.

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

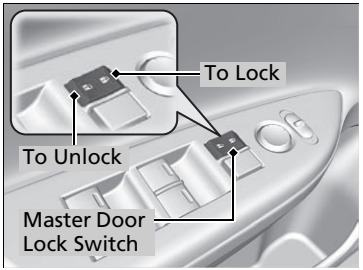
Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 126

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

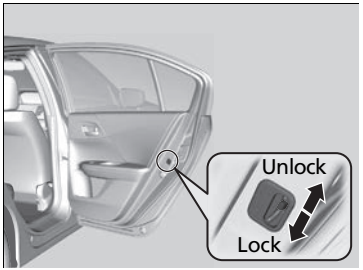


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master lock switch, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks and unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

Auto Door Locking

Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

Auto Door Unlocking

Driver's door open mode

All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the multi-information display*, audio/information screen* or audio/information touch screen*.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

* Not available on all models

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Trunk

■ Opening the trunk

Open the trunk all the way.

▶ If it is not fully opened, the trunk lid may begin to close under its own weight.

■ Closing the trunk

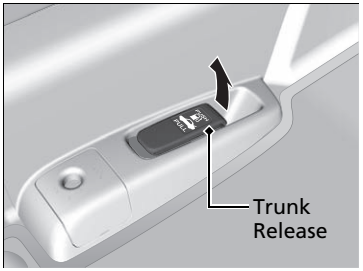
Keep the trunk lid closed while driving to:

▶ Avoid possible damage.

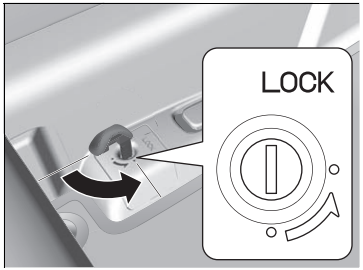
▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

➔ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 64

Using the Trunk Opener



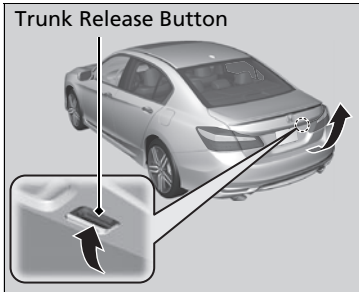
Pulling the trunk release to the lower left of the driver's seat unlocks and opens the trunk.



■ **Locking the trunk opener**

You can lock the trunk release with the master key* or the built-in key*.

Using the Trunk Release Button*



Push up the release button on the trunk lid after the doors are unlocked.

Even if the trunk is locked, you can open the trunk if you carry the smart entry remote.

▶ The beeper will sound.

Locking the trunk opener

Models without smart entry system

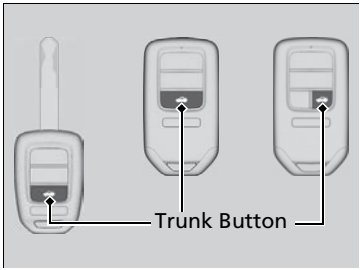
If you need to give the key to someone else, give them the valet key.

Using the Trunk Release Button*

- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- A person who is not carrying the smart entry remote can unlock the trunk if a person who is carrying it is within range.
- Do not leave the smart entry remote inside the trunk and close the lid. The beeper sounds and the trunk cannot be closed.
- Do not carry the smart entry remote near the trunk lid when closing it.
- Do not place the smart entry remote around the rear seat when closing the trunk.

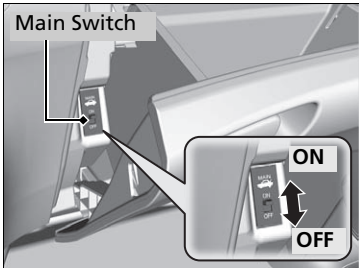
* Not available on all models

Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the trunk release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the trunk.

Trunk Main Switch*



The trunk main switch disables the trunk release button on the remote transmitter and the trunk release button on the trunk lid to protect luggage in the trunk.

1. Make sure the rear seat-back is not folded down.
2. Turn off the trunk main switch in the glove box.
3. Lock the glove box.
4. Lock the trunk release.

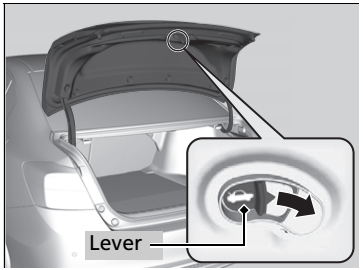
Using the Trunk Opener P. 128

Trunk Main Switch*

If you need to give the key to someone else, remove the built-in key from the smart entry remote by sliding the release knob, and give the remote as a valet key.

* Not available on all models

Emergency Trunk Opener



The trunk release lever allows you to open the trunk from inside for your safety.

Slide the release lever in the direction of the arrow.

Emergency Trunk Opener

Parents should decide if their children should be shown how to use this feature.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as a television set and audio system are strongly magnetic, or a key chain can become magnetic, too.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the ignition key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the trunk, hood or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not go off if the trunk or doors are opened with the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system.

However, the alarm goes off when a door is opened with the key, then the shift lever is moved out of P (automatic transmission/CVT models) or the hood is opened before the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and all the exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter, or smart entry system. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Security System Alarm

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system deactivates.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK 0 *1, and the key has been removed from the ignition switch.
- The hood and trunk are closed.
- All doors are locked from outside with the key, the remote transmitter, or smart entry system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system is set.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter, smart entry system, or the ignition switch is turned to ON II *1. The security system indicator goes off at the same time.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the trunk with the trunk release or the emergency trunk opener.
- Opening the hood with the hood release.

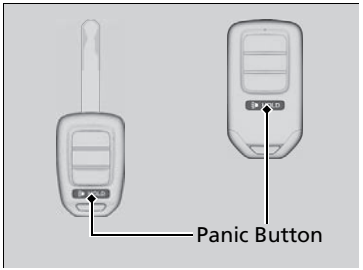
Automatic transmission/CVT models

- Moving the shift lever out of P.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key or remote transmitter.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add another device to it.

Panic Mode



The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

Canceling panic mode

Press any button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to ON II *1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

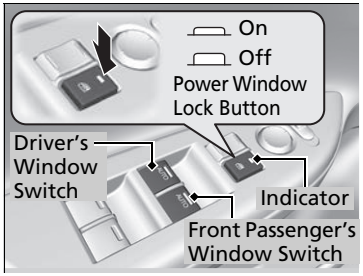
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON II*1, using the switches on the doors. The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all of the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on when children are in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

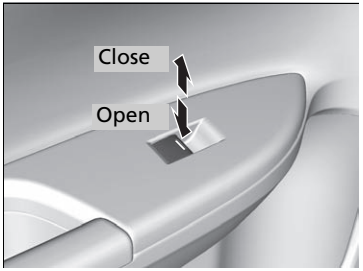
The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1.
Opening either front door cancels this function.

Auto Reverse
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it stops closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

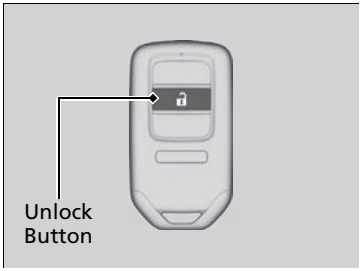
Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function



To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Opening Windows and Moonroof with the Remote*

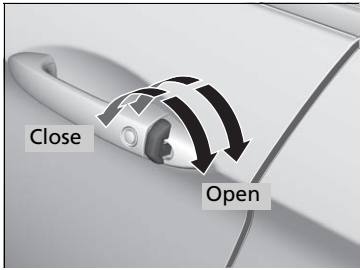


To open: Press the unlock button twice within 10 seconds and hold it down for the second time.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof with the Key*



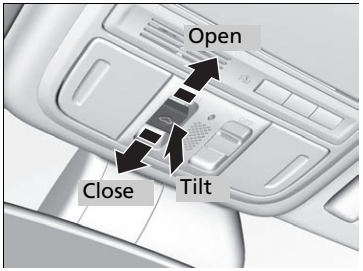
To open: Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.
To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows/moonroof at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Moonroof

You can only operate the moonroof when the ignition switch is in ON II*1. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the moonroof.



Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The moonroof will automatically open or close all the way. To stop the moonroof midway, touch the switch briefly.

Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Tilting the moonroof up

To tilt: Push on the center of the moonroof switch.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Opening/Closing the Moonroof

WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

NOTICE

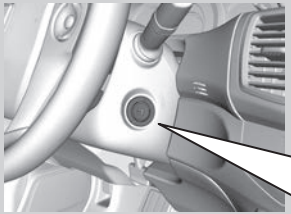
Opening the moonroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the moonroof panel or motor.

The power moonroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch off. Opening either front door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the moonroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the moonroof.

* Not available on all models

Ignition Switch*



0 LOCK: Insert and remove the key in this position.

I ACCESSORY: Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

II ON: This is the position when driving.

III START: This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON II when you let go of the key.

Ignition Switch*

Manual transmission models

WARNING

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

Continuously variable transmission (CVT) models

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in P.

All models

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK 0 or ACCESSORY I, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

Models with multi-information display

When this happens, the following messages appear on the multi-information display:

- In LOCK 0: **Remove Key From Ignition**
- In ACCESSORY I: **Turn Ignition Switch To Lock (0) Position**

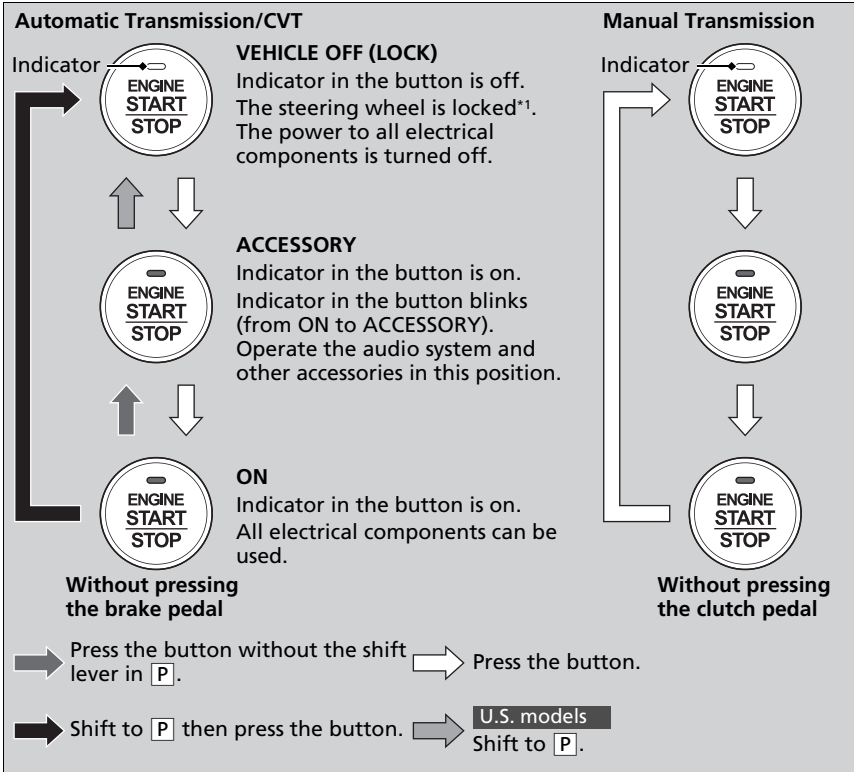
All models

If the key won't turn from LOCK 0 to ACCESSORY I, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

* Not available on all models

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

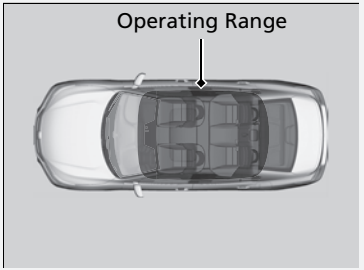
Changing the Power Mode



*1: Except U.S. automatic transmission/CVT models

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.
The engine may also run if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:
Indicator in the button is off, if the engine is running.

If the smart entry remote battery is weak, beeper sounds and the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the multi-information display*.

➡ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 566

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

* Not available on all models

Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in P*1 and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

Except U.S. automatic transmission/CVT models

The steering wheel does not lock.

All models

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the smart entry system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

*1: Automatic transmission/CVT models

Continued

Changing the Power Mode

Except U.S. automatic transmission/CVT models

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Smart Entry Remote Reminder

Models with information display

Models with multi-information display

Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/or outside the vehicle to remind you that the smart entry remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it within the system's operational range.

When the power mode is in ON

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, warning buzzers sound from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the information display or multi-information display notifies the driver inside that the remote is out.

When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

Smart Entry Remote Reminder

When the smart entry remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the smart entry remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

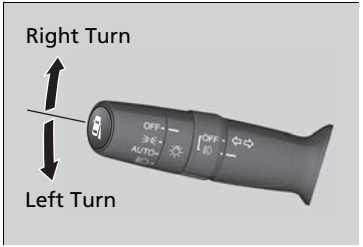
Do not put the smart entry remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK (0) (with/without the key)	ACCESSORY (I)	ON (II)	START (III)
Without Smart Entry System	• Engine is turned off and power is shut down. • The steering wheel is locked. • No electrical components can be used.	• Engine is turned off. • Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	• Normal key position while driving. • All electrical components can be used.	• Use this position to start the engine. • The ignition switch returns to the ON (II) position when you release the key.
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)	ACCESSORY	ON Indicator is: On Off	START
With Smart Entry System and **ENGINE START/STOP** Button	Indicator-Off • Engine is turned off and power is shut down. • The steering wheel is locked*1. • No electrical components can be used.	Indicator-On or blinking • Engine is turned off. • Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	Indicator- On (engine is turned off) Off (engine is running) • All electrical components can be used.	Indicator-Off • The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.

*1:Except U.S. automatic transmission/CVT models

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON [II]*1.

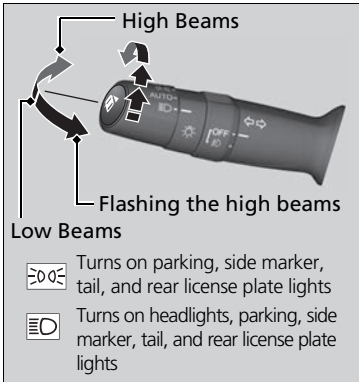
■ **One-touch turn signal**

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

Light Switches

■ Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the position of the ignition switch*1.

■ **High beams**

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ **Low beams**

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ **Flashing the high beams**

Pull the lever back, and release it.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Light Switches

If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

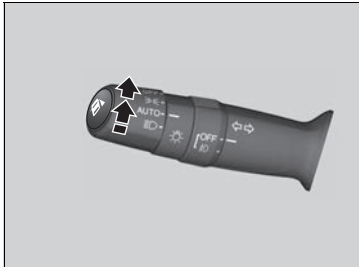
When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➡ **Lights On Indicator** P. 76

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)



Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II *1.

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

▶ You can change the auto light sensitivity setting.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

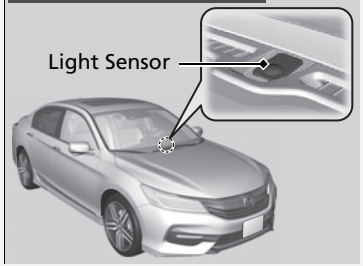
Continued

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

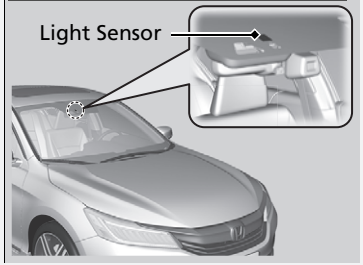
We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

Models without automatic intermittent wipers



Models with automatic intermittent wipers



Headlight Integration with Wipers*

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you remove the key or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

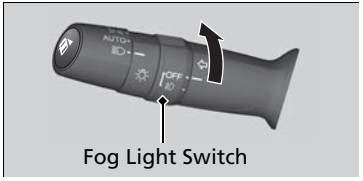
▶ You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *1 with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (three minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

Fog Lights*



Fog Light Switch

When the low beam headlights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

Adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
MAX	Bright
HIGH	
MID	
LOW	Dark
MIN	

Headlight Integration with Wipers*

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.
The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

Fog Lights*

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on.
They go off when the headlights turn off, or when the daytime running lights are on.

➡ **Fog Light Indicator*** P. 77

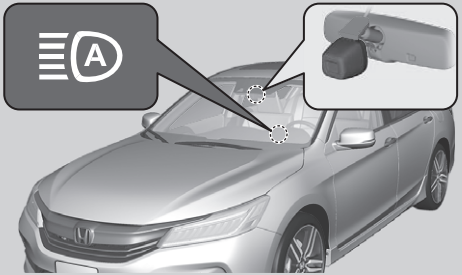
* Not available on all models

Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)*

Uses the camera attached, monitors the space ahead of your vehicle, and automatically changes the low beam headlights to high beam headlights when necessary.

The system operates when:

- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The system recognizes that you are driving at night and the low beam headlights come on.
- The vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h).

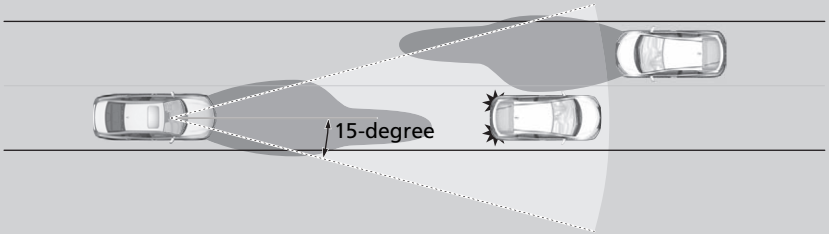


The system changes between high and low beam headlights when:

The camera is not detecting any lights coming from preceding or oncoming vehicles: The headlights change to high beams.

The camera detects lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle: The headlights are returned to low beams.

The camera monitors the range within the 30-degree view angle. The distance that the camera can detect lights ahead differs depending on conditions, such as the brightness of the lights and the weather.



Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)*

The auto high-beam determines when to change the headlight beams by responding to the brightness of the lights ahead of your vehicle. In the following cases, however, the system may not respond to the lights properly:

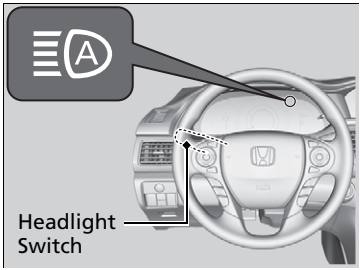
- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windshield frost, etc.).
- Other light sources, such as streetlights and electric billboards are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle ahead of you suddenly cuts you off or is not traveling in the appropriate direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

* Not available on all models

Continued

To Operate the System



Turn the headlight switch in **AUTO** and pull the headlight lever to low beam.

➡ **Light Switches** P. 144

The auto high-beam indicator (Green) comes on.

Temporary cancellation

The auto high-beam operation is temporarily canceled while:

- You are continuously driving at a speed below 15 mph (24 km/h).
- The vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The windshield wipers run at high speed for more than a few seconds.

The system operation resumes once the condition that caused it to cancel improves.

To Operate the System

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windshield around the camera clean. When cleaning the windshield, be careful not to apply the windshield cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film in the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

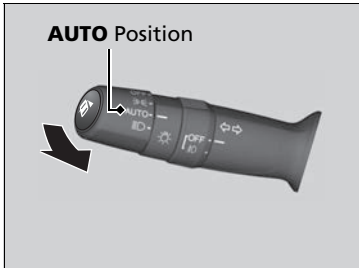
If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun.
If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on the camera.

Models with multi-information display

If the **Can Not Operate:** message appears: Park your vehicle in a safe place. Wipe away debris blocking the windshield, then start driving again. If the message remains on even after driving for a while with the clean windshield, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

To Disable the System



Disable the system when the vehicle is parked with the ignition switch in ON [II]*1 and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

To disable the system: Pull the light switch lever towards you and hold it for 40 seconds. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink twice.

To enable the system: Pull the light switch lever towards you and hold it for 30 seconds. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink once.

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

To Disable the System

The auto high-beam will remain in the selected disabled or enabled setting each time you start the engine.

Daytime Running Lights

Models with bulb type parking lights

The high beam headlights come on slightly dimmer than normal when the following conditions have been met:

Models with LED type parking/daytime running lights

The parking/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON [II]*1.
- The headlight switch is off, or in [≡DOE].
- The parking brake is released.

The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

Models with bulb type parking lights

The high beam headlights return to the original brightness once the headlight switch is turned on.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the head light switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

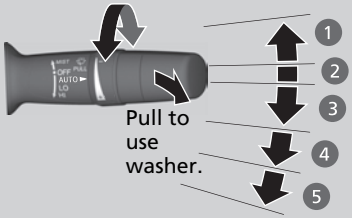
*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Daytime Running Lights

The daytime running lights come on dimmer when the headlight switch is in [≡DOE] than when it is in **AUTO**. In **AUTO**, if the ambient brightness is dark, the low beam headlights come on.

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wiper/Washer



1. **MIST**
2. **OFF**
3. **INT***: Low speed with intermittent
   AUTO*: Wiper speed varies automatically
4. **LO**: Low speed wipe
5. **HI**: High speed wipe

The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON [II]*1.

MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

Wiper switch (OFF, INT*, LO, HI)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

AUTO*

Automatic Intermittent Wipers* P. 152

Adjusting wiper operation

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper delay.

Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, then stop.

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield, becoming stuck.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage them. Use the defroster to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

Models without automatic intermittent wipers

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.
When the vehicle starts moving, the wipers make a single sweep.
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting ( ) and the **LO** setting become the same.

All models

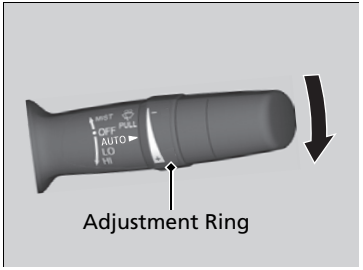
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When in **AUTO**, you can also adjust the rainfall sensor sensitivity using the adjustment ring.

Sensor sensitivity

Low Sensitivity:
Wipers will operate when more rainfall is detected.

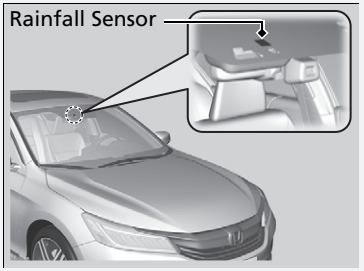
High Sensitivity:
Wipers will operate when less rainfall is detected.

Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.
Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY [I] or LOCK [0]*1, then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.

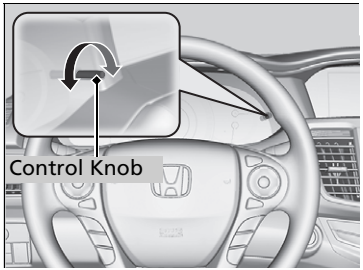


Do not put the wiper lever in **AUTO** when cleaning the windshield or driving through a car wash. If the wiper lever is in **AUTO**, and the power mode is in ON, the rainfall sensor may respond to your hand or car wash liquids, and the wipers may operate automatically.

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

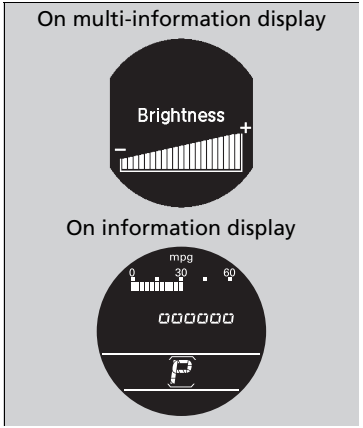
* Not available on all models

Brightness Control



When the parking lights are turned on and the ignition switch is in ON II *1, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Turn the knob to the right.
Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. The information display*/multi-information display* will return to its original state several seconds after you adjust the brightness.



■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the information display*/multi-information display* while you are adjusting it.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

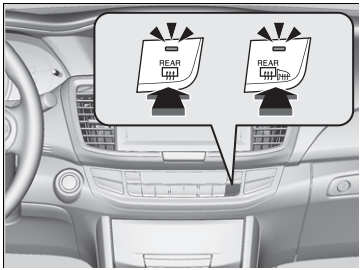
Pressing the (Select/Reset) knob switches the display.

If you turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds. This cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the parking lights are on.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button

Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON II *1.



The rear defogger and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, they do not automatically switch off.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button

NOTICE

When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires.
It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the defogger heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged.
Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

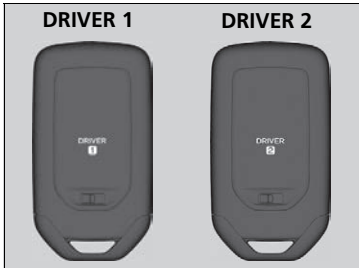
* Not available on all models

Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat positions with the driving position memory system. When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

The multi-information display* shows you which remote you used to unlock the vehicle when you enter.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



Driving Position Memory System*

Using the multi-information display*, audio/information screen* or audio/information touch screen*, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

System Operation

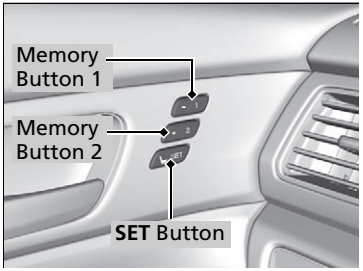
The system will not operate if:

- The vehicle speed is above 2 mph (3 km/h).
- Either memory position button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- The seat position is adjusted while in operation.
- The memory 1 or 2 position is set fully to the rear.

* Not available on all models

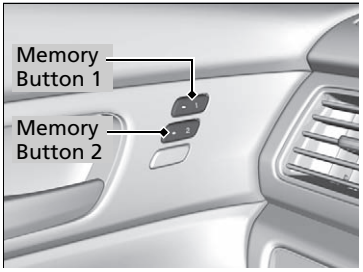
Continued

Storing a Position in Memory



1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
   ▶ You will hear a beep, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button 1 or 2 within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
   ▶ Once the seat position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

Recalling the Stored Position



Automatic transmission/CVT models

1. Move the shift lever to P.

All models

2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button (1 or 2).
   ▶ You will hear a beep, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear a beep, and the indicator light stays on.

Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

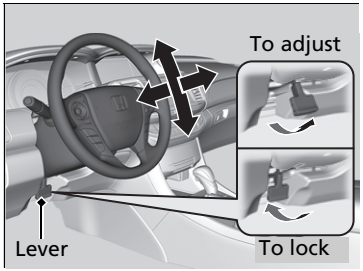
Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button (1 or 2).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Automatic transmission/CVT models
  Shift into any position except P.
- Manual transmission models
  Release the parking brake.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
   ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
   ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
   ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

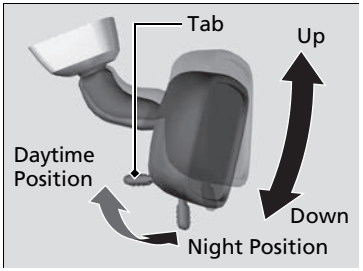
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

Interior Rearview Mirror

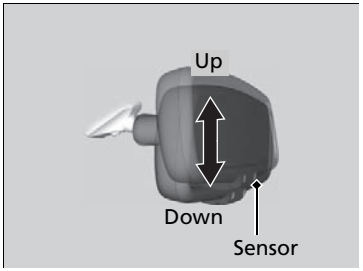
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based in inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

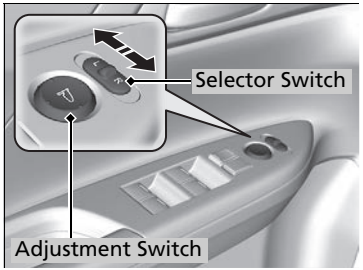
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
Adjusting the Seat Positions P. 160

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift position is in R.

* Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



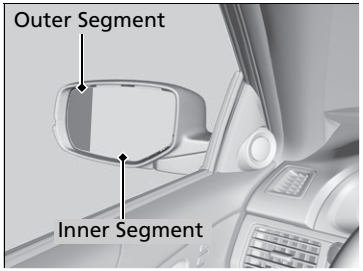
You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON [II]*1.

■ Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Expanded View Driver's Mirror



The driver side door mirror has outer and inner segments.

The outer segment is slightly curved to provide a wider angle view than a standard flat mirror. This wider view may help you check areas that are not visible using a standard door mirror.

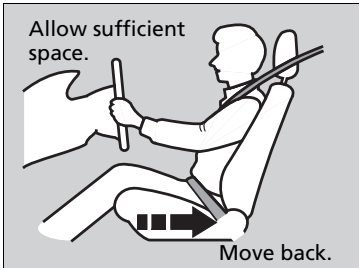
Expanded View Driver's Mirror

Objects visible in the outer segment of the driver side door mirror appear smaller than objects in the rest of the mirror. But in fact, they are closer than they appear.

Do not rely on your mirrors. Always look to the side and behind your vehicle before changing lanes.

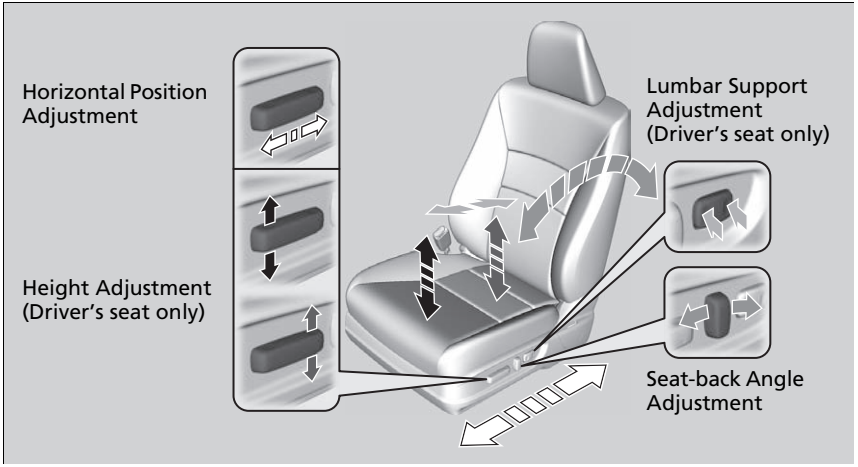
*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Adjusting the Seat Positions



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

■ Adjusting the front power seat(s)*



Adjusting the Seats

⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

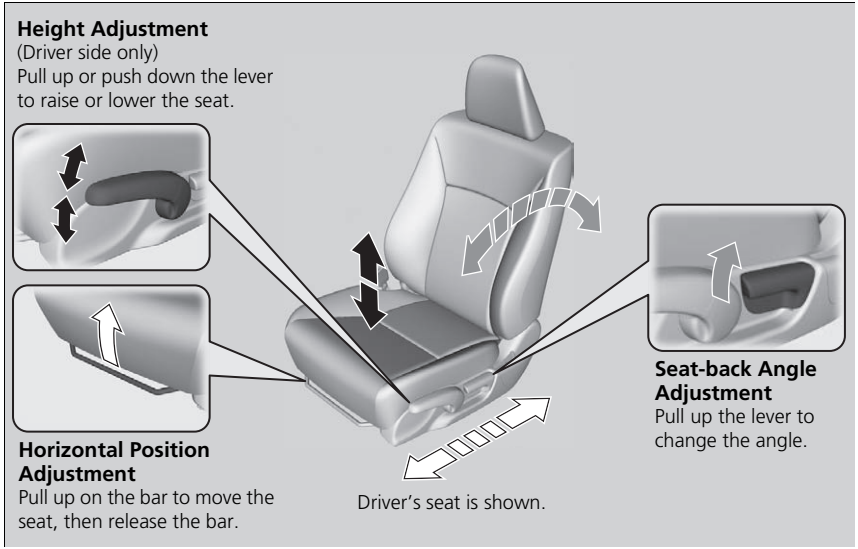
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

* Not available on all models

■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*



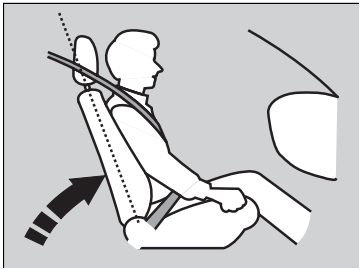
Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

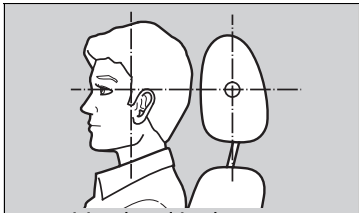
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

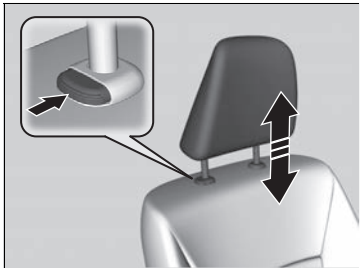
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Head Restraints

Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions



Position head in the center of the head restraint.



Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.

To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.

Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

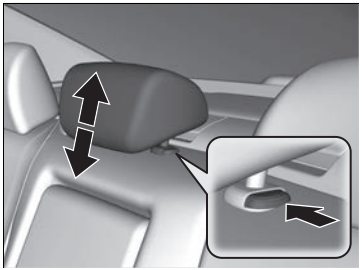
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:
- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Continued

Changing the Rear Center Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the center back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

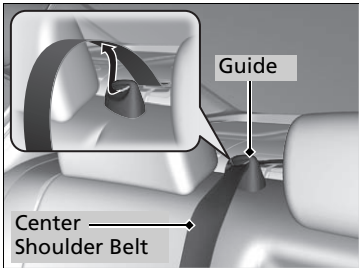
⚠WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

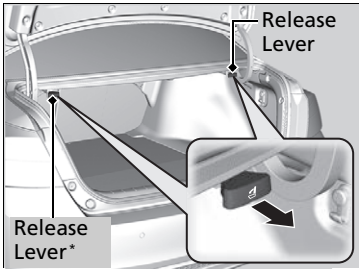
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Rear Seats

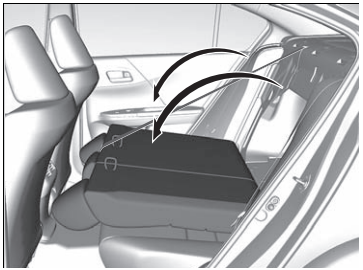
Folding Down the Rear Seat



1. Remove the center shoulder belt from the guide.



2. Pull the release lever in the trunk to release the lock.



3. Fold the seat-back down.

If the rear head restraints get caught on the front seat-backs, remove the head restraints.

➡ **Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints** P. 164

Folding Down the Rear Seat

The rear seat-back(s*) can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the trunk.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the trunk lid open.

➡ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 64

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the center shoulder belt is re-positioned in the guide.

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the weight sensors in the front passenger seat to work improperly.

➡ **Passenger Airbag Off Indicator** P. 50

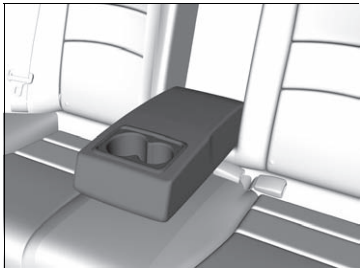
Make sure all items in the trunk or items extending through the opening into the rear seat is properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

* Not available on all models

Armrest

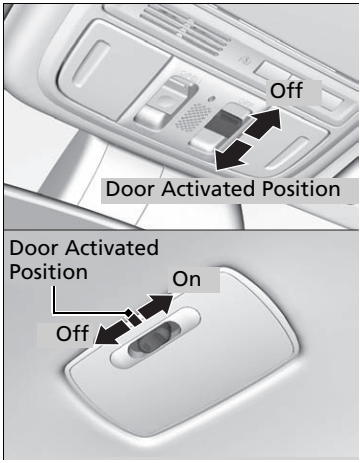
Using the Rear Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the center seat-back.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

Models without smart entry system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

Models without smart entry system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

Models with smart entry system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 103, 298, 316

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON [II]*1.

Models without smart entry system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.

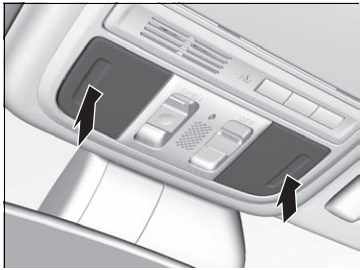
Models with smart entry system

- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.

If you leave any of the doors open without the key in the ignition switch*1, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Map Lights



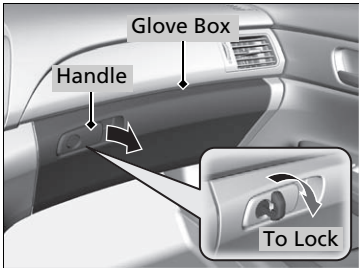
The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

Map Lights

When the ceiling light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box

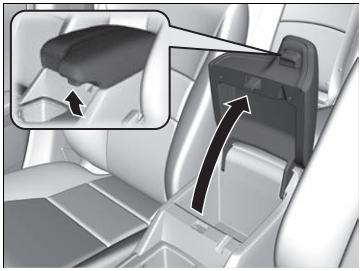


Pull the handle to open the glove box.

Models with smart entry system

You can lock the glove box with the built-in key.

Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

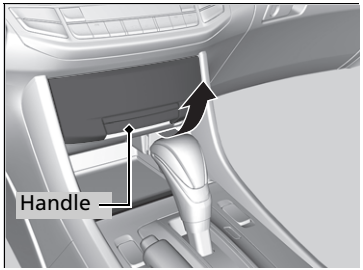
Glove Box

⚠WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

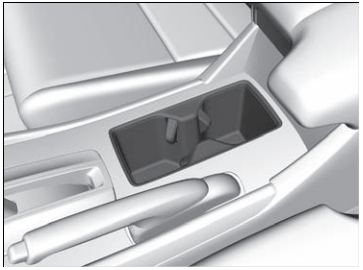
Center Pocket



Pull the handle to open the pocket.

Continued

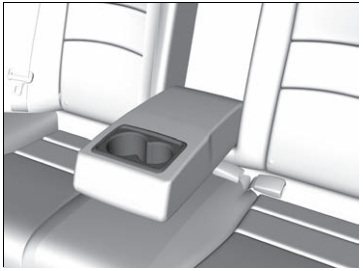
Beverage Holders



Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.

Front door beverage holders



Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

Beverage Holders

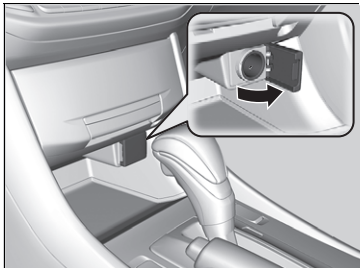
NOTICE

Spilled liquids damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

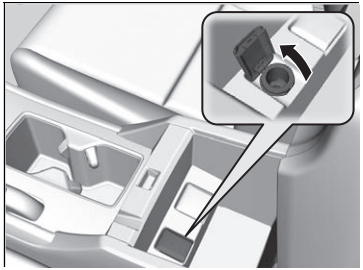
Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY I or ON II*1.



Accessory power socket (console panel)

Open the cover to use it.



Accessory power socket (console compartment)

Open the console lid and the cover to use it.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Accessory Power Sockets

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element.
This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

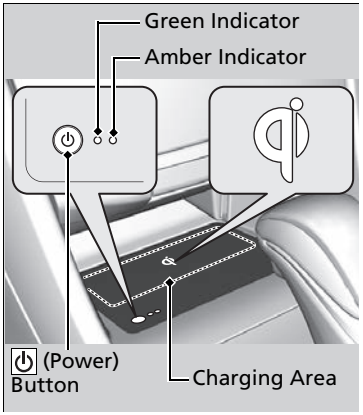
To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

When both sockets are being used, the combined power rating of the accessories should not exceed 180 watts (15 amps).

Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II*1.

Charge a compatible device on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (power) button.
   ▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
   ▶ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
   ▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the center of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
   ▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Wireless Charger*

CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid using spraying hair spray, insecticides, etc, that may contact the charge pad surface.

This system consumes a lot of power, so do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

* Not available on all models

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simulta-neously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Move the device to the center of the charging area where is located.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

Wireless Charger*

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging.
The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches can go wrong.

"Qi" and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:
- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic wave or noises such as TV station, electric power plant, or gas station.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All the doors or the trunk are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the smart entry system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

* Not available on all models

Continued

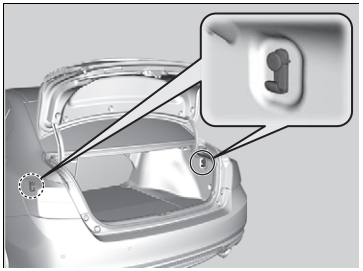
Coat Hook

There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

Cargo Hooks



The cargo hooks in the trunk can be used to install a net for securing items.

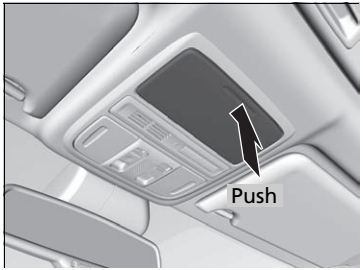
Cargo Hooks

Heavy objects may damage the hook.
Make sure any items put on this hook weigh less than 6.6 lbs (3 kg).

Distribute cargo evenly on the floor of the trunk, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible.

➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 415

Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.

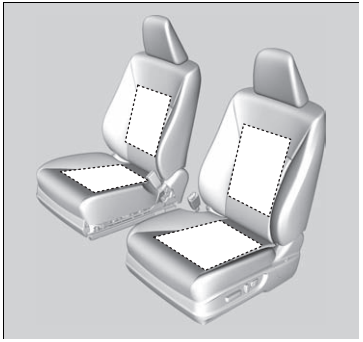
You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

Sunglasses Holder

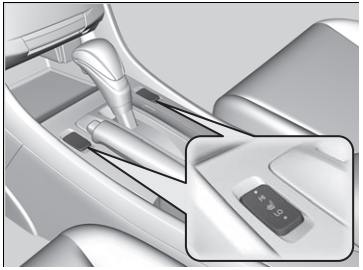
Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

Continued

Front Seat Heaters*



The ignition switch must be in ON [II]*1 to use the seat heaters. The **HI** setting heats the seats faster than the **LO** setting.



While in **HI**, the heater cycles on and off.

▶ The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. Briefly press the switch on the opposite side to turn the heater off. The indicator will be off. When a comfortable temperature is reached, select **LO** to keep the seat warm.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Front Seat Heaters*

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

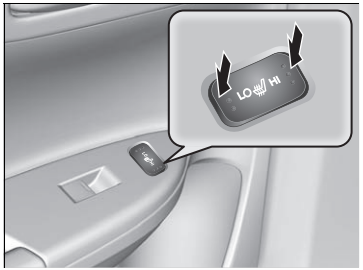
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

* Not available on all models

Rear Seat Heaters*



The ignition switch must be in ON II*1 to use the seat heaters. The **HI** setting heats the seats faster than the **LO** setting.

There is no heater in the rear center seating position.

While in **HI**, the heater cycles on and off.

▶ The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. When a comfortable temperature is reached, select **LO** to keep the seat warm.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Rear Seat Heaters*

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

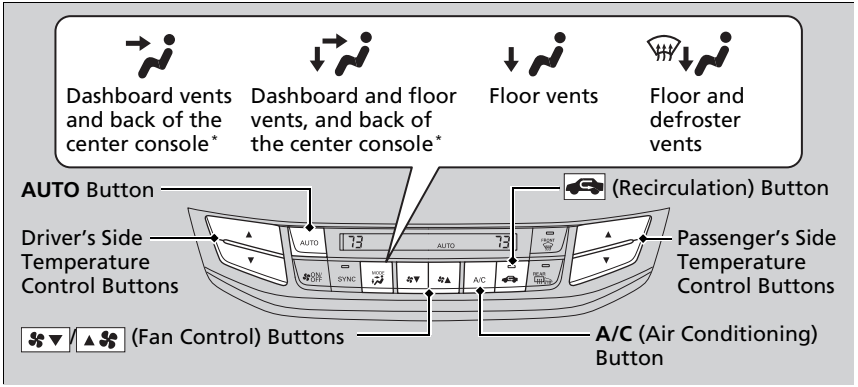
Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control buttons.
3. Press the ON/OFF (on/off) button to cancel.

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.
The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

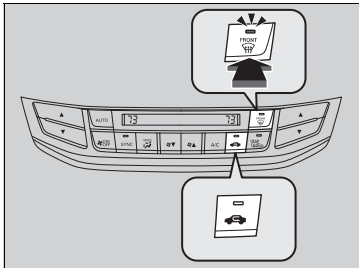
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

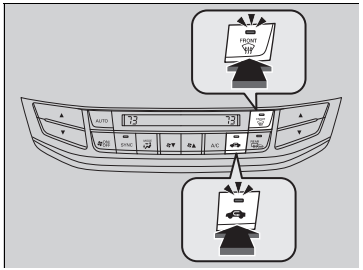
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows



Pressing the FRONT button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the FRONT button.
2. Press the button.

Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

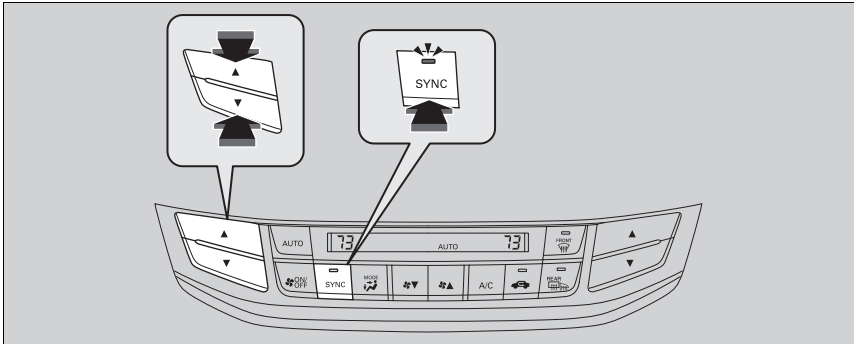
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Synchronized Mode



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver side and the passenger side in synchronized mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
▶ The system will switch to the synchronized mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using driver's side temperature control buttons.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

Synchronized Mode

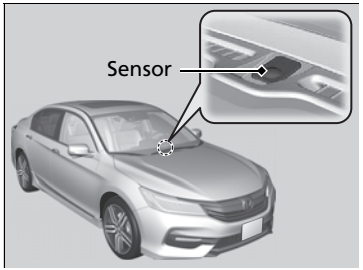
When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronized mode.

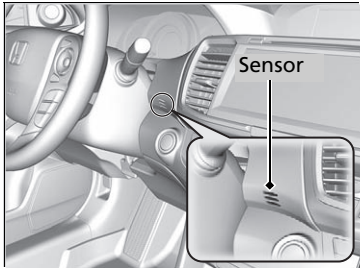
When the system is in dual mode, the driver side temperature and the passenger side temperature can be set separately.

Models with navigation system

The system adjusts each temperature based on the information of the sunlight sensor and the sun position updated by the navigation system.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors





The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System
About Your Audio System 186
USB Port(s*) 187
Auxiliary Input Jack* 188
Audio System Theft Protection* 189
Audio Remote Controls 190

Models with one display

Audio System Basic Operation 192
Audio/Information Screen 193
Display Setup 198
Playing AM/FM Radio 199
Playing a CD 201
Playing an iPod 204
Playing Internet Radio 207
Playing a USB Flash Drive 210
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 213

Models with two displays

Audio System Basic Operation 215
Audio/Information Screen 216
Audio/Information Touch Screen 218
Adjusting the Sound 232
Display Setup 233
Voice Control Operation 235
Playing AM/FM Radio 239
Playing SiriusXM® Radio* 244
Playing a CD 252
Playing an iPod 255
Song By Voice™ (SBV) 258
Playing Pandora®* 262
Playing Aha™ 264
Playing a USB Flash Drive 265
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 268
HondaLink® 270
Wi-Fi Connection 275
Apple CarPlay 277
Android Auto 281
Siri Eyes Free 285

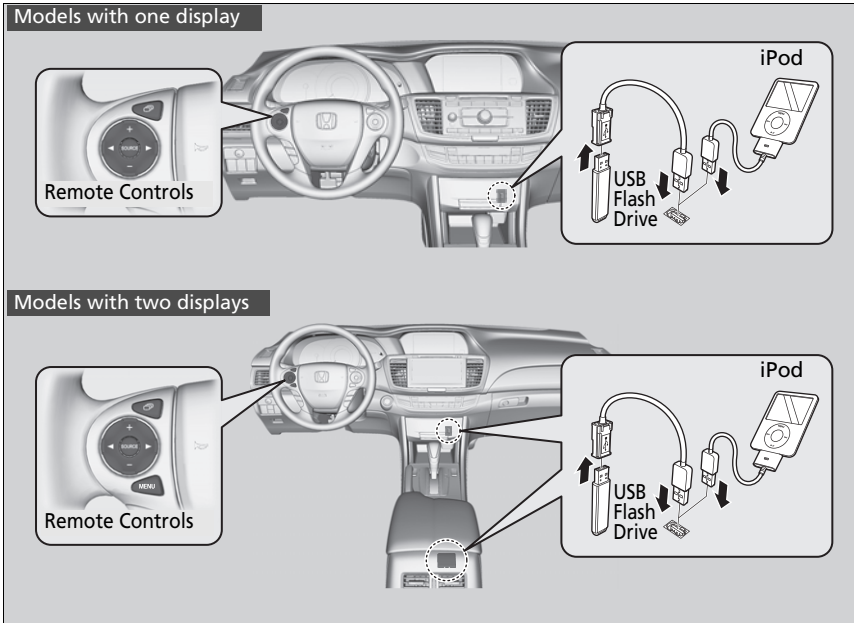
Audio Error Messages 286
General Information on the Audio System 291
Customized Features 298, 316
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver* ... 340
***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** 343, 374
Compass* 409

* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio and SiriusXM® Radio service*. It can also play audio CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel or the icons on the touchscreen interface*.



About Your Audio System

SiriusXM® Radio is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on SiriusXM® Radio, contact a dealer.

➡ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 291

SiriusXM® Radio is available in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

SiriusXM® is a trademark of Sirius XM Radio, Inc.

Video CDs, DVDs, and 3-inch (8-cm) mini CDs are not supported.

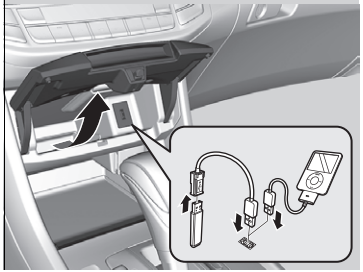
iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

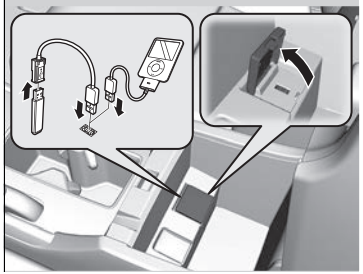
* Not available on all models

USB Port(s*)

In Center Pocket



In Console Compartment*



1. Open the cover.
2. Install the iPod dock connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

USB Port(s*)

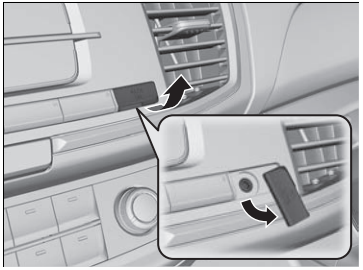
- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit *www.apple.com/ipod*.

* Not available on all models

Auxiliary Input Jack*

Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.



1. Open the **AUX** cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 1/8 inch (3.5 mm) stereo miniplug.
   ▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

Auxiliary Input Jack*

You can return to AUX mode by pressing the **AUX** button.

Replacement of the audio system with other than a genuine Honda system may make the auxiliary jack inoperable.

* Not available on all models

Audio System Theft Protection*

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display **Enter code**. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

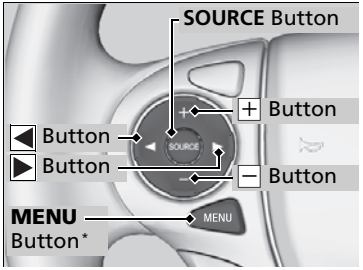
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON [II] *1.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.



SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:

Models with one display

FM→AM→CD→USB→iPod→ *Bluetooth*® Audio→Pandora®*→AUX

Models with two displays

FM→AM→SiriusXM®*→CD→USB→iPod→ Pandora®*→*Bluetooth*® Audio→Audio Apps

+ − (Volume) Buttons

Press +: To increase the volume.
Press −: To decrease the volume.

◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press ◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a CD, iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press ▶: To skip to the next song.
  Press ◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a CD (MP3/WMA/AAC), USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press and hold ▶: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold ◀: To go back to the previous folder.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.

* Not available on all models

Models with two displays

Steering Wheel MENU Button

To choose options for the current audio device, press **MENU**, **Audio Menu**, and then **SOURCE**.

Options available to you for each audio device:

- Radio: You can select **Scan**, **Auto Select**, **Save Preset**, **Seek Up**, or **Seek Down**.
- HD Radio™*: You can select **Scan**, **Auto Select**, **Tag Song**, **Save Preset**, **Seek Up**, or **Seek Down**.
- SiriusXM®*: You can select **Scan**, **Tag Song**, **Save Preset**, **Channel Up**, **Channel Down**, **Category Up**, or **Category Down**.
- CD or USB flash drive: You can select **Scan Folders**, **Scan Tracks**, **Repeat Folder**, **Repeat Track**, **Random in Folder**, or **Random All Tracks**.
- iPod: You can select **Play/Pause**, **Repeat Song**, **Shuffle Albums**, or **Shuffle All Songs**.
- *Bluetooth*® Audio: You can select **Pause** or **Play**.
- Pandora®*: You can select **Like**, **Dislike**, **Bookmark**, or **Play/Pause**.

To choose options for the navigation system while it is in operation, press **MENU**, select **Navi Menu**, and then **SOURCE**.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

To choose options for HFL, press **MENU**, select **Phone Menu**, and then **SOURCE**. You can select **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Redial**.

To choose options for the display setting, press **MENU**, select **Display Setting**, and then **SOURCE**.

You can select **Brightness**, **Contrast**, or **Black Level**.

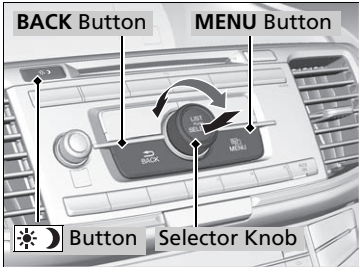
Audio Remote Controls

The **MENU** button is available only when the audio mode is FM, AM, SiriusXM®*, CD, USB, iPod, Pandora®*, or *Bluetooth*® Audio.

* Not available on all models

Models with one display

To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II *1.



Use the selector knob or **MENU** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

MENU button: Press to select any mode. The available mode includes **Change Source**, **Station List**, **Save Preset**, **Radio Text**, **Music Search**, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from **Scan**, **Random/Repeat**, and so on.

BACK button: Press to go back to the previous display.

button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press once and make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

Audio Menu Items

- **Station List** P. 200
- **Radio text** P. 200
- **Music Search** P. 202, 205, 211
- **Scan** P. 200, 203, 212
- **Random/Repeat** P. 203, 206, 212

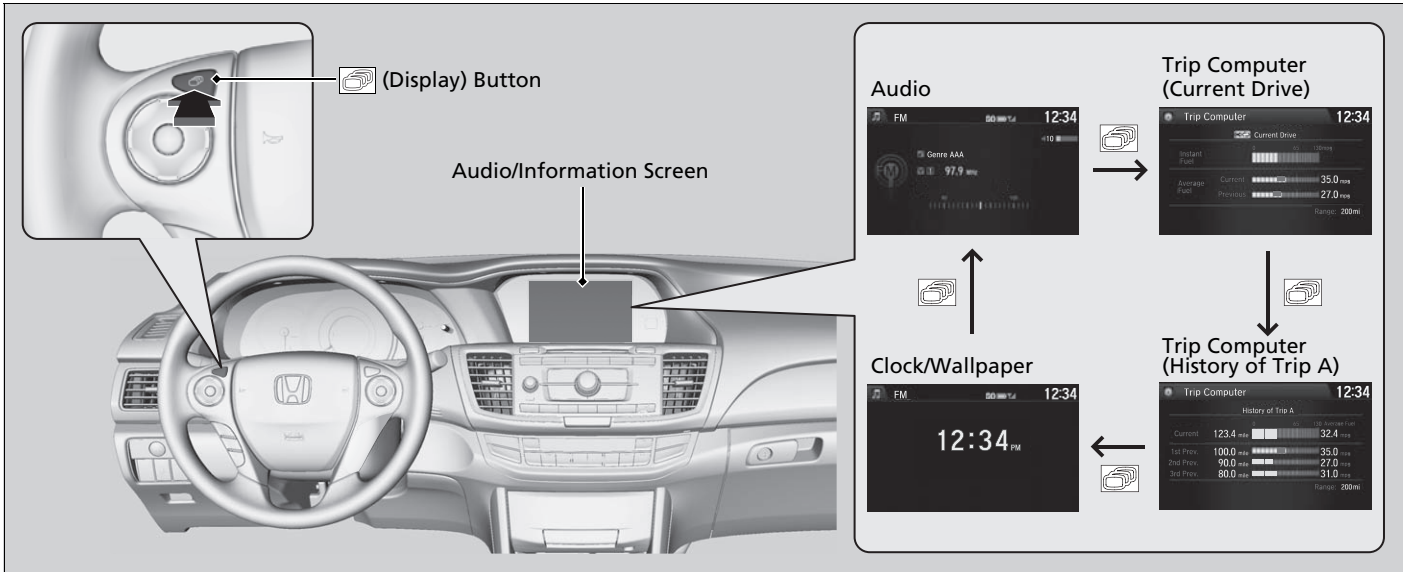
This product includes software codes licensed under the conditions stated by the copyright holder. For license conditions and the copy of the corresponding source code, visit: *http://www.hondaopensource1.com/002*

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display

Press the (display) button to change the display.



Continued

■ Audio
Shows the current audio information.

■ Trip computer (Current Drive)
Shows the range, and instant and average fuel economy of the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy from your last trip.

■ Trip computer (History of Trip A)
Shows the range, average fuel economy and distance traveled for the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy and distances traveled during the last three driving cycles.
Each time you reset the trip meter A, the information on the display updates. The history of the previous three driving cycles is kept.

■ Clock/Wallpaper
Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   USB Port(s*) P. 187
2. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
3. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
4. Rotate to select **Add New Wallpaper**, then press .
   ▶ The preview of the imported data is displayed.

5. Rotate to select a desired picture.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
6. Press to save the data.
   ▶ The confirmation message will appear. Then the display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,680 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 420 × 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Select wallpaper

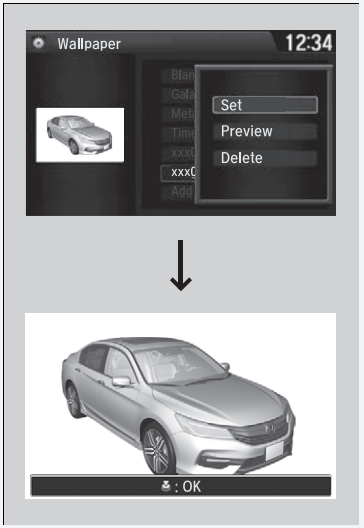
1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
3. Rotate to select a desired wallpaper, then press .
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Rotate to select **Set**, then press .

■ Delete wallpaper

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
3. Rotate to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
   ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
5. Rotate to select **OK**, then press to delete completely.

Wallpaper Setup

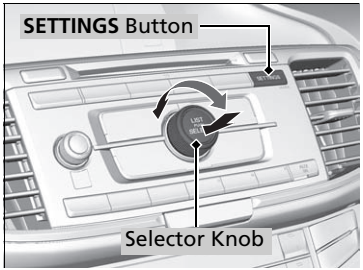
From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Preview** and press to see a preview at full-size screen.



To go back to the previous screen, press to select **OK**, or press the **BACK** button.

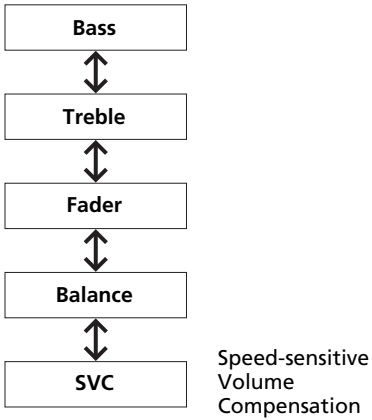
When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Audio Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Sound**, then press .

Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Display**.
3. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
4. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

Changing the Screen's Color Theme

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Other**.
3. Rotate to select **Background Color**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Playing AM/FM Radio

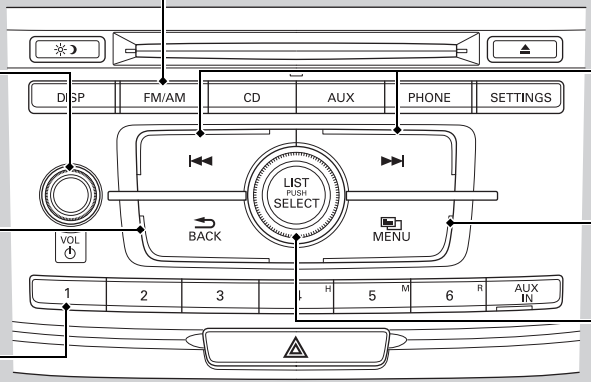
Audio/Information Screen

FM/AM Button
Press to select a band.

VOL/⏻ (Power/volume) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

BACK Button
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.

Preset Buttons (1-6)
To store a station:
Tune to the selected station.
Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.
To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.



Seek/Skip Buttons
Press |◀◀ and ▶▶| to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

MENU Button
Press to display the menu items.

Selector Knob
Turn to tune the radio frequency.
Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

Continued

Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate to select the station, then press .

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Press while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate to select **Refresh**, then press .

Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.
1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Radio Text**, then press .

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press to select **Stop**, or press the **BACK** button.

Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.
Audio Remote Controls P. 190
You can also switch the mode by pressing the **MENU** button and selecting **Change Source** on the MENU screen.

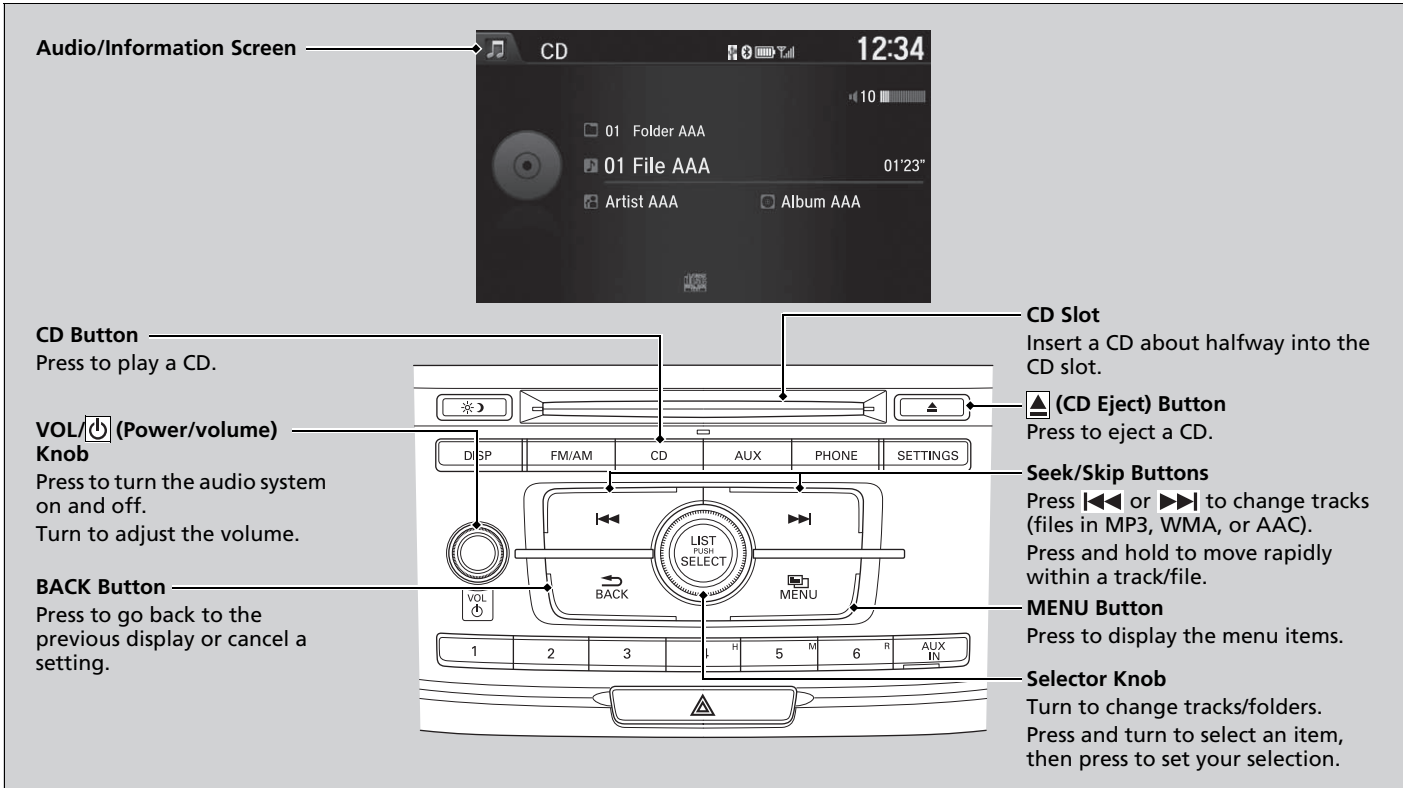
You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Playing a CD

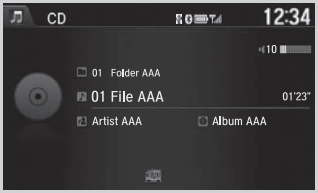
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD** button.



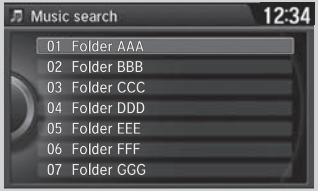
*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

Continued

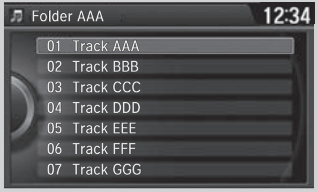
How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



Folder Selection



File Selection



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a folder.
4. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.
5. Rotate to select a file, then press .

Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

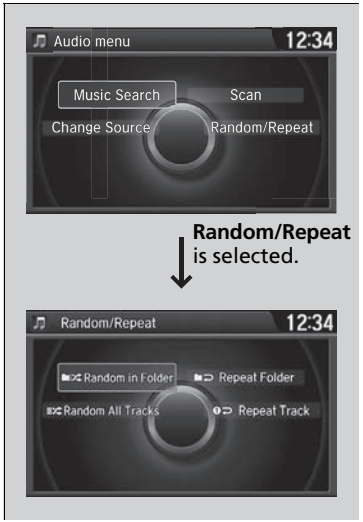
WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:
- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan** or **Random/ Repeat**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current track/file.

Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

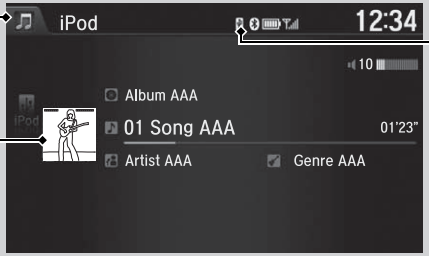
Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB Port, then press the **AUX** button.

USB Port(s*) P. 187

Audio/Information Screen

Album Art

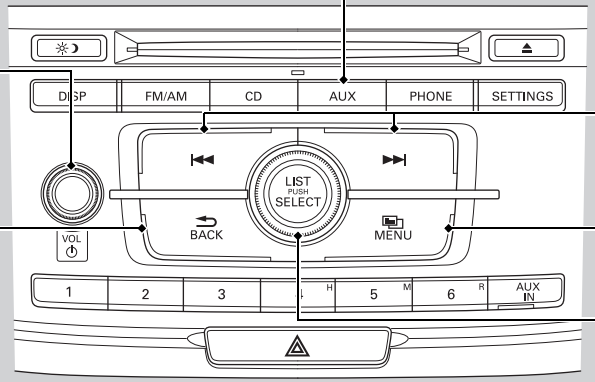


USB Indicator
Appears when an iPod is connected.

AUX Button
Press to select iPod (if connected).

VOL/⏻ (Power/volume) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

BACK Button
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.



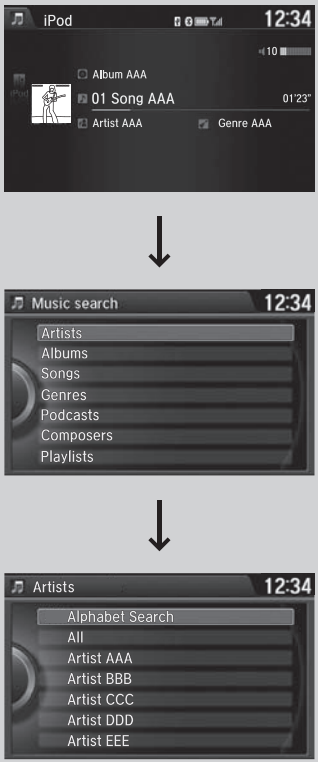
Seek/Skip Buttons
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to change songs.
Press and hold to move rapidly within a song.

MENU Button
Press to display the menu items.

Selector Knob
Turn to change songs.
Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

* Not available on all models

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a menu.
4. Press to display the items on that menu.
5. Rotate to select an item, then press .

Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

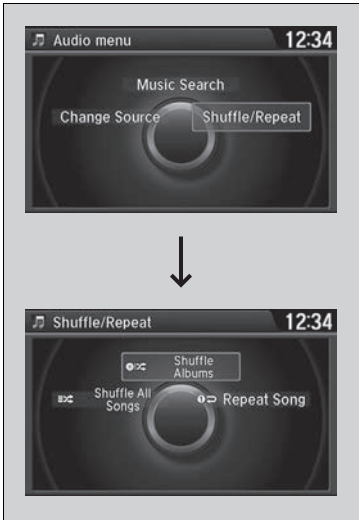
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 287

Continued

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Shuffle/Repeat**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat Song: Repeats the current file.

Shuffle Album: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

U.S. models

Compatible phones only

Playing Internet Radio

Connect a compatible phone through *Bluetooth*®.

iPhone

You can also connect the phone using your dock connector to the USB port.
Press the **AUX** button to select Pandora mode.

Playing Internet Radio

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc. Used with permission. Pandora® is only available in certain countries. Please visit *http://www.pandora.com/legal* for more information.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit *www.handsfreelink.honda.com*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

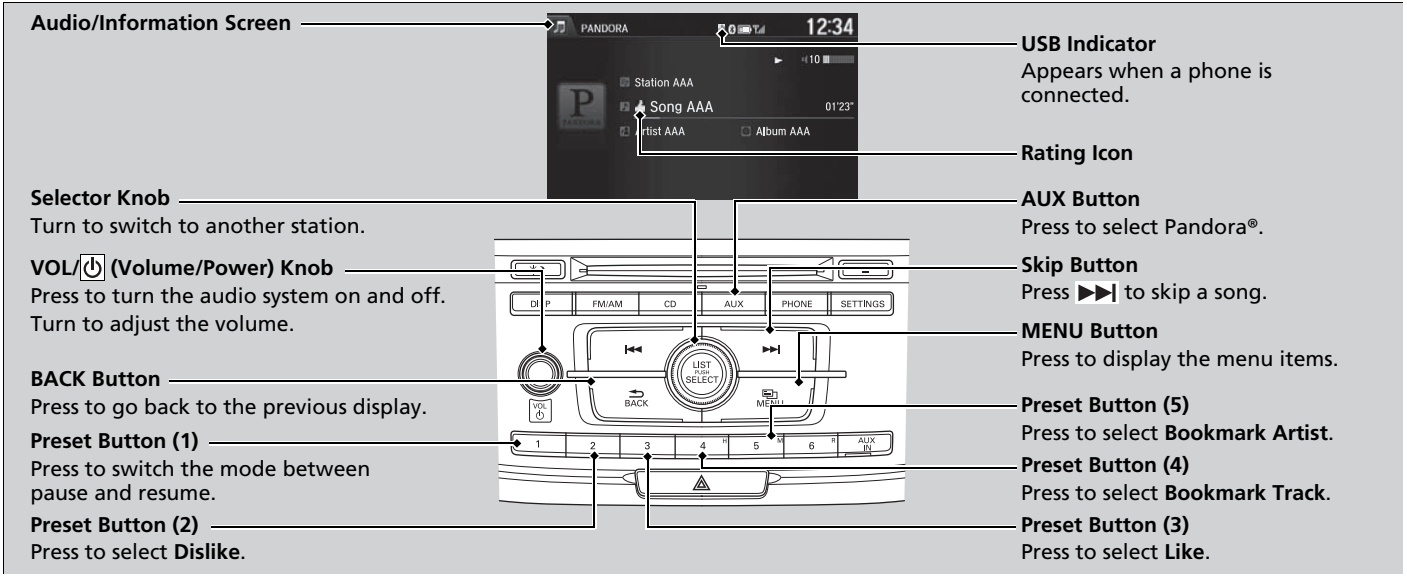
To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit *www.pandora.com*. for more information.

Pandora® is free personalized radio that offers effortless and endless music and comedy. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, songs, genres, composers, or comedians and it will do the rest.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

Changing Stations
To change stations, activate the Pandora® menu, select **Station List**, and then select a new station.

Continued


Audio/Information Screen
PANDORA
12:34
Station AAA
Song AAA
01'23"
Artist AAA
Album AAA
USB Indicator
Appears when a phone is connected.
Rating Icon
Selector Knob
Turn to switch to another station.
VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.
BACK Button
Press to go back to the previous display.
Preset Button (1)
Press to switch the mode between pause and resume.
Preset Button (2)
Press to select Dislike.
AUX Button
Press to select Pandora®.
Skip Button
Press ▶▶| to skip a song.
MENU Button
Press to display the menu items.
Preset Button (5)
Press to select Bookmark Artist.
Preset Button (4)
Press to select Bookmark Track.
Preset Button (3)
Press to select Like.
FM/AM
CD
AUX
PHONE
SETTINGS
LIST
PUSH
SELECT
BACK
MENU
VOL
AUX IN

Pandora® Menu

You can operate some of the Pandora® menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Like** (Thumbs-up)
- **Dislike** (Thumbs-down)
- **Station List**
- **Change Source**
- **Bookmark Track**
- **Bookmark Artist**
- **Play/Pause**

Operating a menu item

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select an item, then press .

Pandora® Menu

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
➡ **Pandora®** P. 288

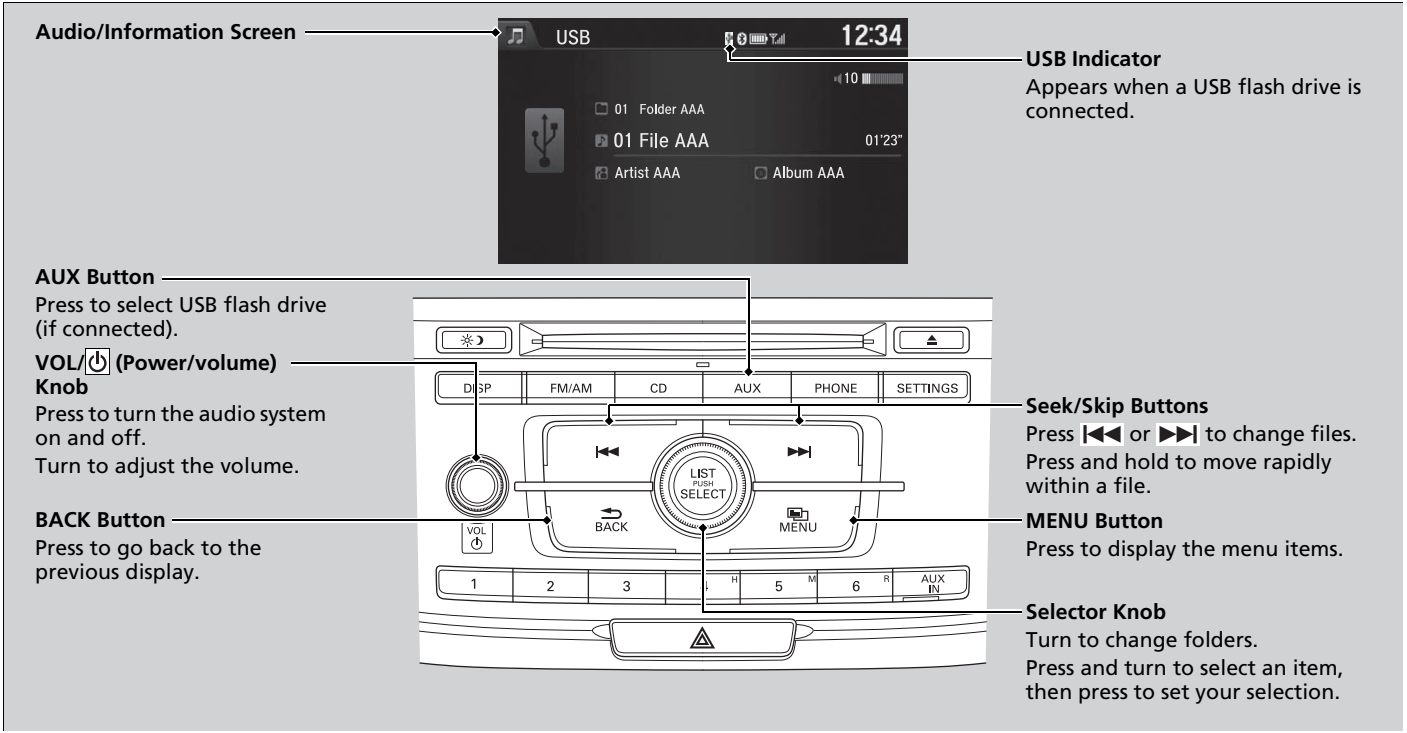
Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **AUX** button.

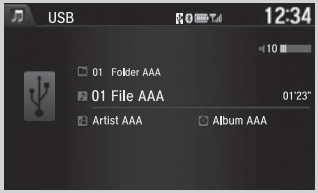
USB Port(s*) P. 187



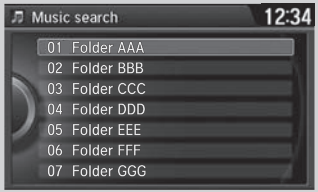
*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models

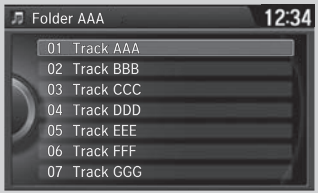
How to Select a File from the Music Search List



Folder Selection



File Selection



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a folder.
4. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.
5. Rotate to select a file, then press .

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➔ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 291

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

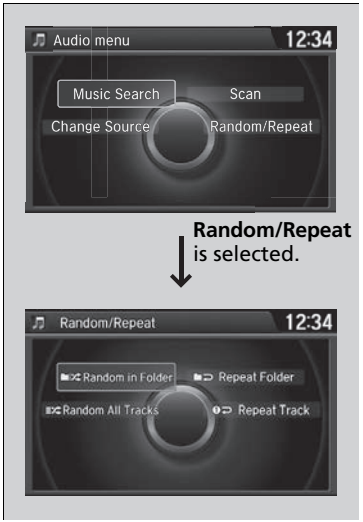
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➔ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 287

Continued

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan** or **Random/ Repeat**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

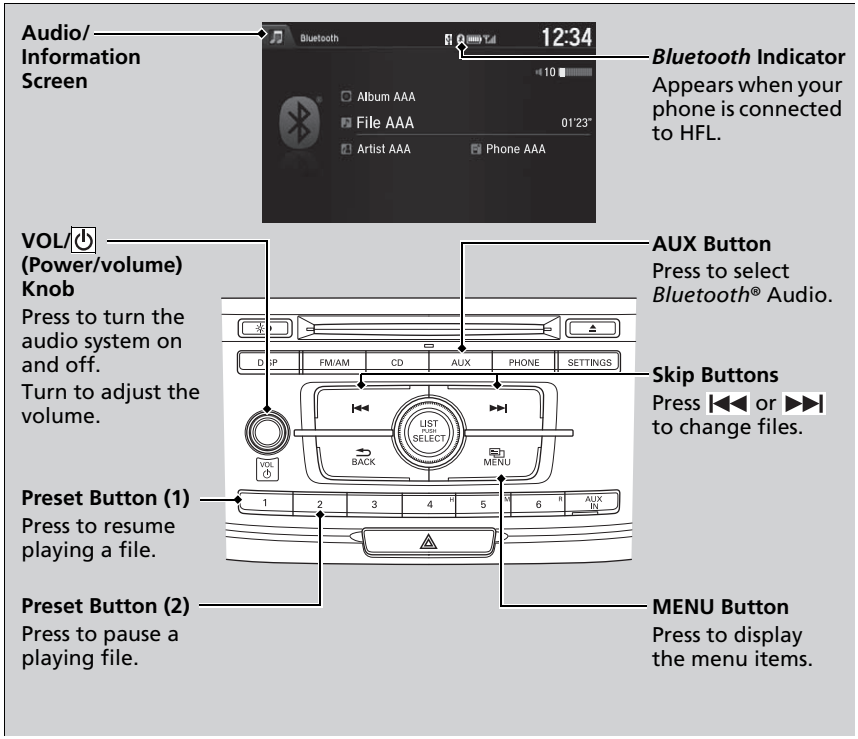
Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 350



Continued

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit *www.handsfreelink.honda.com*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit *www.handsfreelink.ca*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFL.
2. Press the **AUX** button.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

To pause or resume a file

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play** or **Pause**, then press .

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

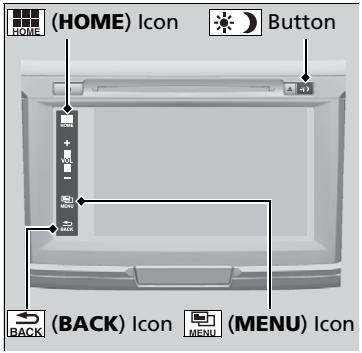
The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack, you may need to press the **AUX** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

Models with two displays

To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II*1.



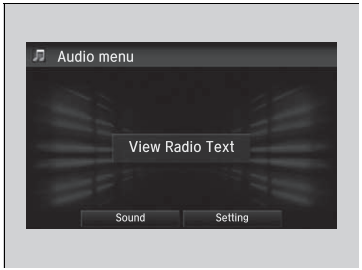
HOME: Select to go to the home screen.

Switching the Display P. 218

MENU: Select to display any mode.

The available modes include **Sound**, **View Radio Text**, **Music Search**, and play modes.

BACK: Select to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.



Button: Press to change the audio/information touch screen brightness.

Press once and select − or + to make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you press , the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio Menu Items

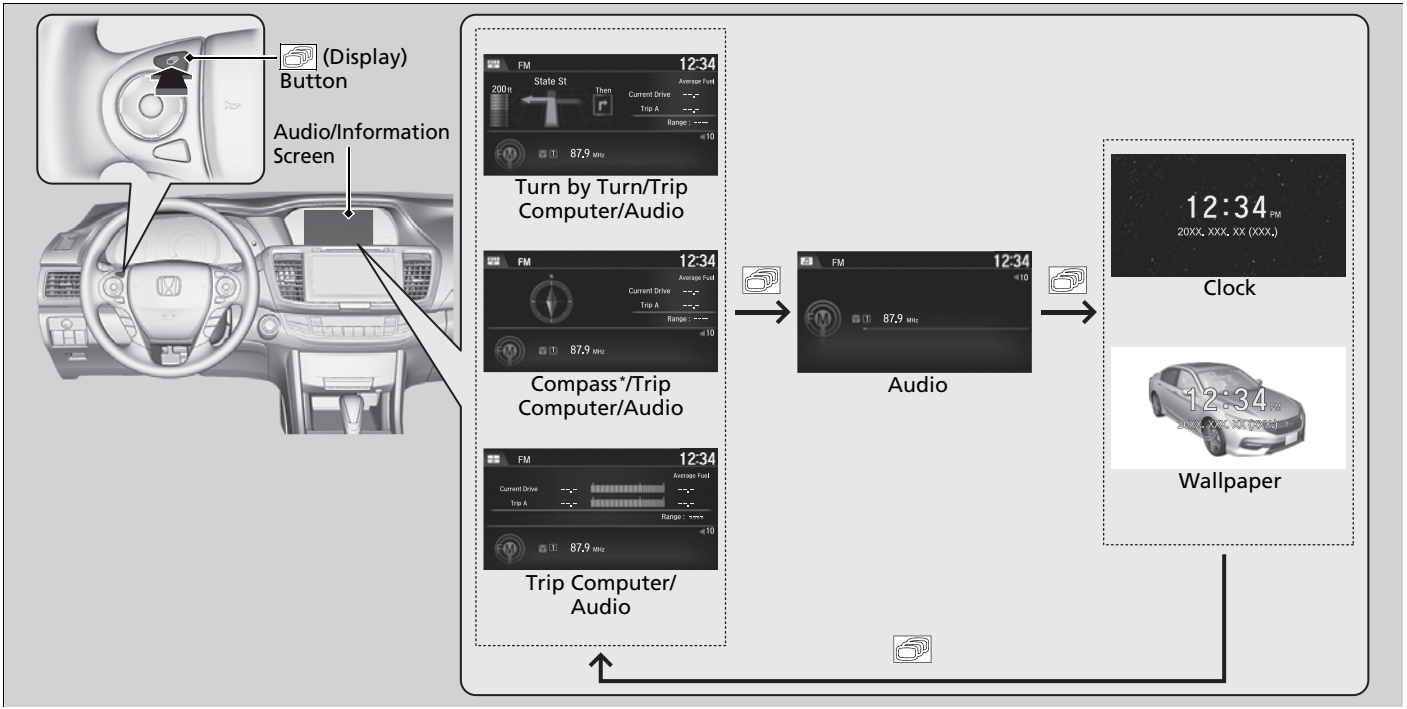
Station List P. 240, 242
Music Search P. 253, 256, 266, 269
Scan P. 241, 251, 254, 267
Play Mode P. 254, 257, 267

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status, trip computer, compass*, Turn by Turn, and clock/wallpaper.

Switching the Display

Press the (display) button to change the display.



* Not available on all models

■ Turn by Turn
Displays the Turn by Turn screen.

■ Trip computer
Displays the range and average fuel economy of the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy from your last trip.

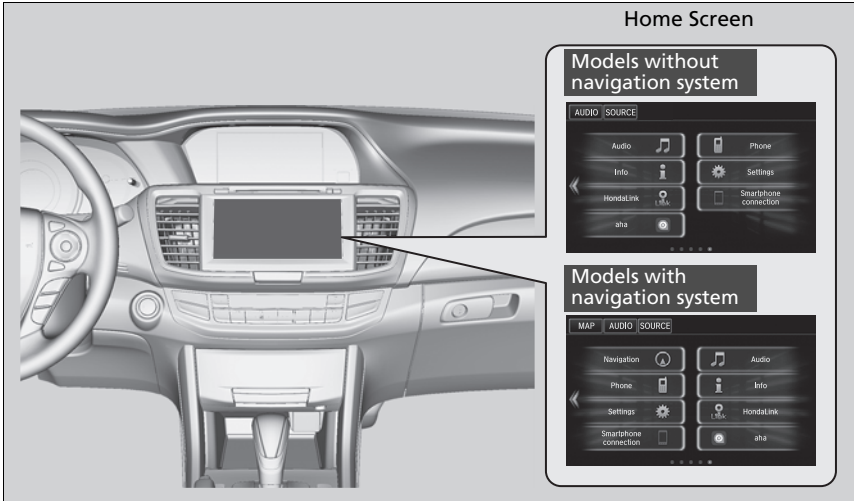
■ Audio
Displays the current audio information.

■ Clock/Wallpaper
Displays a clock screen.

Audio/Information Touch Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

■ Switching the Display



Select HOME to go to the home screen.
Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **HondaLink**, **Aha**, **Smartphone connection**, or **App List**.

■ Phone

Displays the HFL information.

➡ ***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 374

* Not available on all models

■ Info

Displays **Trip Computer**. To see all available information, **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info**, or **System/Device Information**, select MENU on the **Info Menu** screen.

Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.
  To delete the history manually, select **Delete History** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

Voice Info: Displays the all commands list.

System/Device Information:

- **System Info**: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB Info**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 316

■ Navigation*

Displays the navigation screen.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ HondaLink

Connects with your smartphone*1 to play personalized music, information, and social media streams.

➡ **HondaLink®** P. 270

■ Aha

Displays the Aha™ screen.

➡ **Playing Aha™** P. 264

■ Smartphone connection

Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

➡ **Apple CarPlay** P. 277
➡ **Android Auto** P. 281

■ App List

Adds or removes App or Widget on the home screen.

➡ **Home Screen** P. 224

*1: Available on specific phones only. Check *handsfreelink.honda.com* for U.S. and *www.handsfreelink.ca* for Canada for compatible phones and *hondalink.com* for U.S. and *honda.ca/hondalink* for Canada for feature details.

Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout

1. Select HOME.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

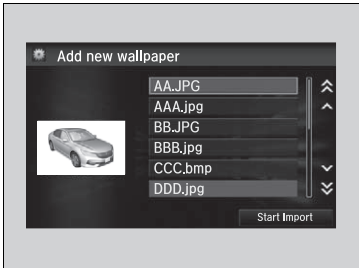
Continued

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information touch screen.

■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   ➡ **USB Port(s*)** P. 187
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock/Info**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
   ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory.
  Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 256 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

* Not available on all models

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set

Press the (display) button to change the audio/information screen until the wallpaper is displayed.

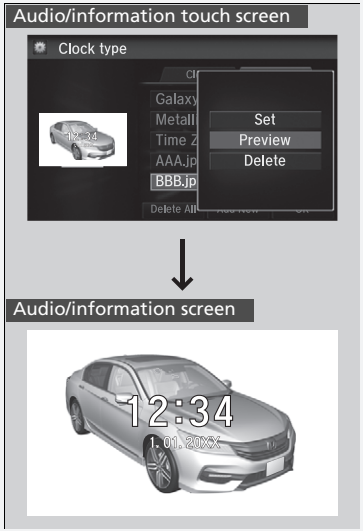
➡ **Switching the Display** P. 216

■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or select BACK.

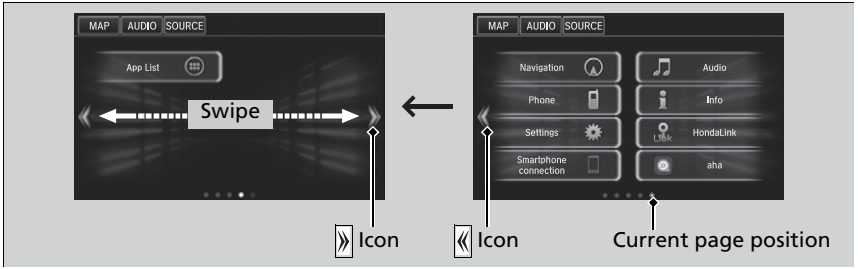
When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

Continued

Home Screen

To change to a next screen

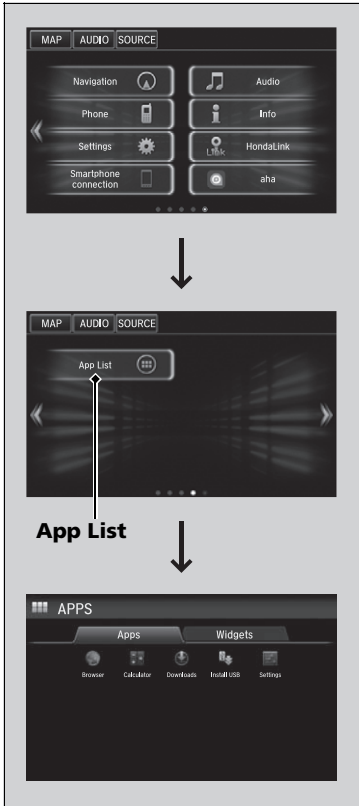


Selecting « or », or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

■ To use apps or widgets



App List

1. Select HOME.
2. Select «.
3. Select **App List**.
   ▶ The **APPS** screen appears.
4. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- **Browser**: Displays the web browser utilized by smartphone and Wi-Fi connection.
- **Calculator**: Displays Calculator.
- **Downloads**: Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- **Install USB**: Installs and updates apps stored in the USB flash drive.
- **Settings**: Displays the Android setting screen.

To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.
➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 339

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.
➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 339

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

There is a possibility that a browser is shut down in the situation of the use. In that situation, the screen will return to before the browser startup.

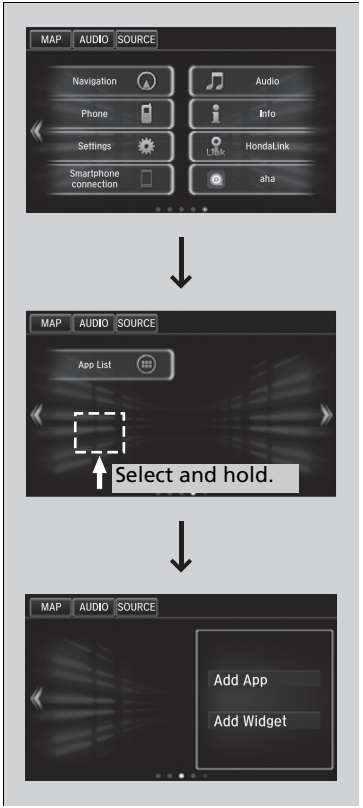
You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detail Information**.
6. Select an App that you want to delete.
7. Select **Delete**.

Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

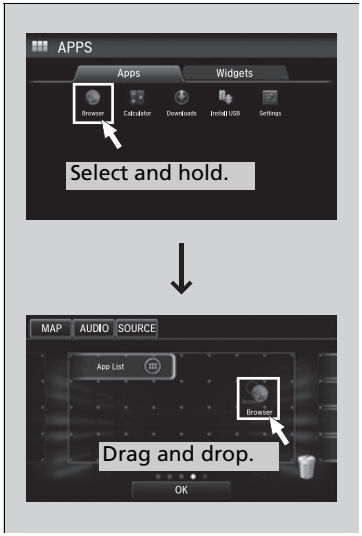
Continued

■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Select HOME.
2. Select ⟪.
3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.
   ▶ The **APPS** screen appears.



5. Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

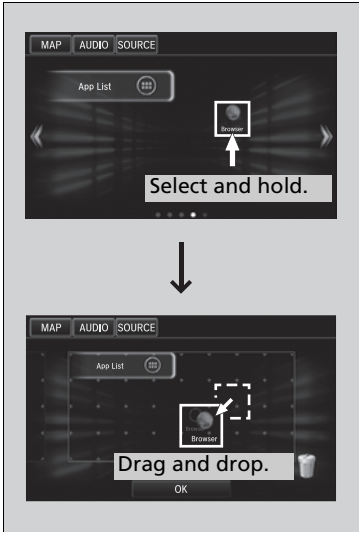
6. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.

7. Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

Continued

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
3. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

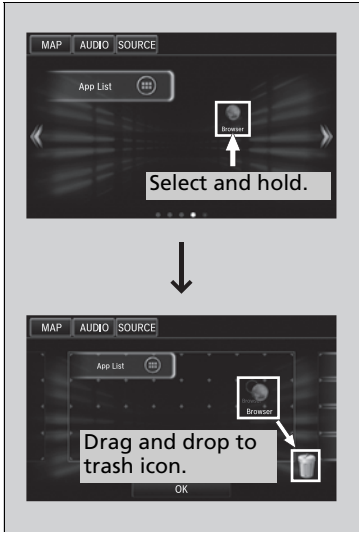
To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **HondaLink**, **aha**, **Smartphone connection**, and **App List** icons in the same manner.

* Not available on all models

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
   ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
3. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To remove icons on the home screen

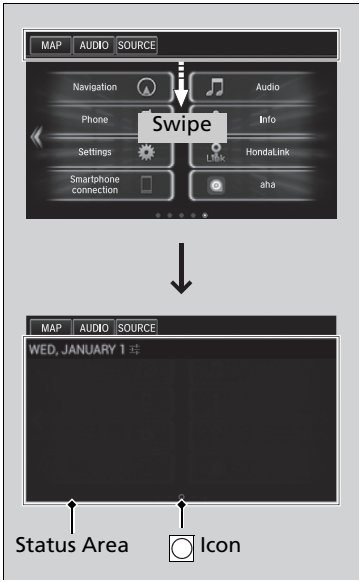
You cannot delete the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **HondaLink**, **aha**, **Smartphone connection**, and **App List** icons.

Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

* Not available on all models

Continued

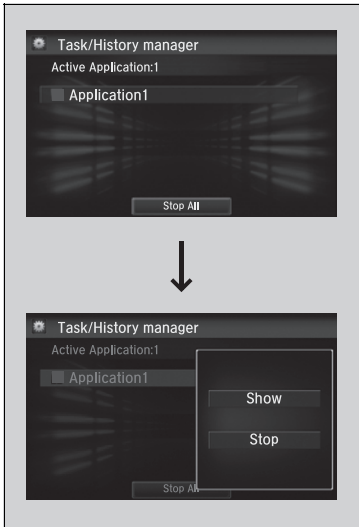
Status Area



1. Swipe the upper area of the screen.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Select BACK or swipe up the icon to close the area.

Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



1. Select and hold HOME.
2. Select an app you want to close.
3. Select **Stop**.
   ▶ The display will return to the app list.

Closing Apps

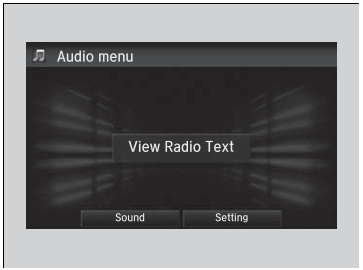
If you leave the apps used open in the background, some apps may stop operating properly next time using them.
If this happens close unused apps.

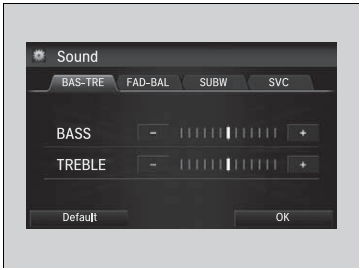
To close all apps on the system, select **Stop All**, then **Yes**.

You cannot close the HondaLink®, Aha™ and Garmin* apps.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Sound





1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Audio**.
3. Select MENU.
4. Select **Sound**.

Select a tab from the following choices: **BASS**, **TREBLE**, **FADER**, **BALANCE**, **Subwoofer***, **Speed Volume Compensation** (SVC).

Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound the following procedure.
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Sound**.

Features

* Not available on all models

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information touch screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

Changing the Screen's Color Theme

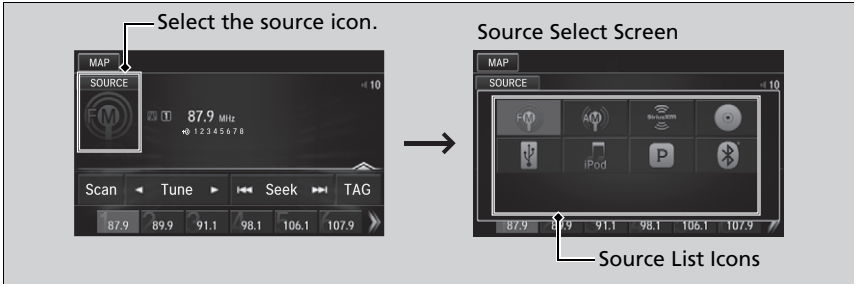
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Color**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Continued

Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Selecting an Audio Source

If you startup preinstalled audio apps, AUDIO Apps is displayed on the upper portion of the screen. These preinstalled apps cannot be displayed on the source select screen.
You can startup those audio apps from AUDIO Apps.

When you are using the Aha™ screen and you want to select another source, select **SOURCE** on the upper left of the screen. The source select screen will appear. Select the source you want.

Voice Control Operation

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.
The voice control system uses the (Talk) and (hang-up/back) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
- Close the windows and moonroof*.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

Voice Control Operation

When you press the button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

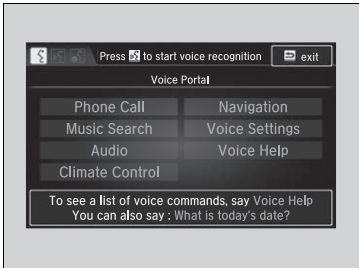
Voice Recognition

The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Voice Portal Screen



When the (Talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.
For a complete list of commands, say "*Voice Help*" after the beep or select **Voice Help**.

You can also see the list of commands by selecting **Info**, MENU, and **Voice Info**.

Phone Call

This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognizes the *Phone call* command, the screen will change to the voice recognition screen for the phone commands.

- *Dial by number*
- *Call history*
- *Redial*
- *Call <Your Contact Name>*
- *Call <Phone Number>*

Phone Call commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Music Search*1

This can be only used when the iPod or USB device is connected.

Audio*1

When the system recognizes the *Audio* command, the screen will change to the audio voice recognition screen.

- *Audio On*
- *Audio Off*
- *Radio FM*
- *Radio AM*
- *Radio SXM*
- *DISC*
- *Pandora**
- *iPod*
- *USB*
- *Other Sources*

Pandora®* cannot be used with Android Auto.

Navigation*1

The screen changes to the navigation voice recognition screen.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Voice Settings

The screen changes to the **Voice Recog** tab on the **System settings** screen.

Trip Computer

The screen changes to the trip computer screen.

*1: Models with navigation system

* Not available on all models

■ Voice Help

You can see a list of the available commands on the screen.

- *Useful Commands*
- *Phone Commands*
- *Audio Commands*
- *On Screen Commands*
- *Music Search Commands*
- *General Commands*
- *Climate Control Commands*
- *All Commands*
- *Voice Settings*
- *Getting Started*

■ Useful Commands

The system accepts these commands on the voice portal top screen.

- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your Contact Name>*
- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

■ Phone Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

- *Call by Number*
- *Call by Name*
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your Contact Name>*

■ Audio Commands*1

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

■ Radio FM Commands

- *Radio tune to <87.7-107.9> FM*
- *Radio tune to <87.7 -107.9> HD <1-8> FM*
- *Radio FM preset <1-12>*

■ Radio AM Commands

- *Radio tune to <530-1710> AM*
- *Radio AM preset <1-6>*

■ Radio SXM Commands

- *SXM channel <1-999>*
- *SXM channel <station name>*
- *Radio SXM preset <1-12>*

■ DISC Commands

- *DISC play*
- *DISC play track <1-30>*

■ Pandora Commands*

- *Pandora play*

■ iPod Commands

- *iPod play*
- *iPod play track <1-30>*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

■ USB Commands

- *USB play*
- *USB play track <1-30>*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

■ *Bluetooth*® audio Commands

- *Bluetooth® audio play*

NOTE:

Bluetooth® Audio commands may not work on some phones or *Bluetooth*® Audio devices.

*1: Models with navigation system

* Not available on all models

Continued

On Screen Commands

When **On Screen Commands** is selected, the explanation screen is displayed.

Music Search Commands*1

The system accepts these commands on the **Music Search** screen.

Using Song By Voice

Song By Voice™ is a feature that allows you to select music from your iPod or USB device using Voice Commands. To activate this mode, you must push the talk switch and say: "*Music search*".

Song By Voice Commands

- *What am I listening to?*
- *Who am I listening to?*
- *Who is this?*
- *What's playing?*
- *Who's playing?*
- *What album is this?*

Play Commands

- *Play artist <Name>*
- *Play track/song <Name>*
- *Play album <Name>*
- *Play genre/category <Name>*
- *Play playlist <Name>*
- *Play composer <Name>*

List Commands

- *List artist <Name>*
- *List album <Name>*
- *List genre/category <Name>*
- *List playlist <Name>*
- *List composer <Name>*

General Commands

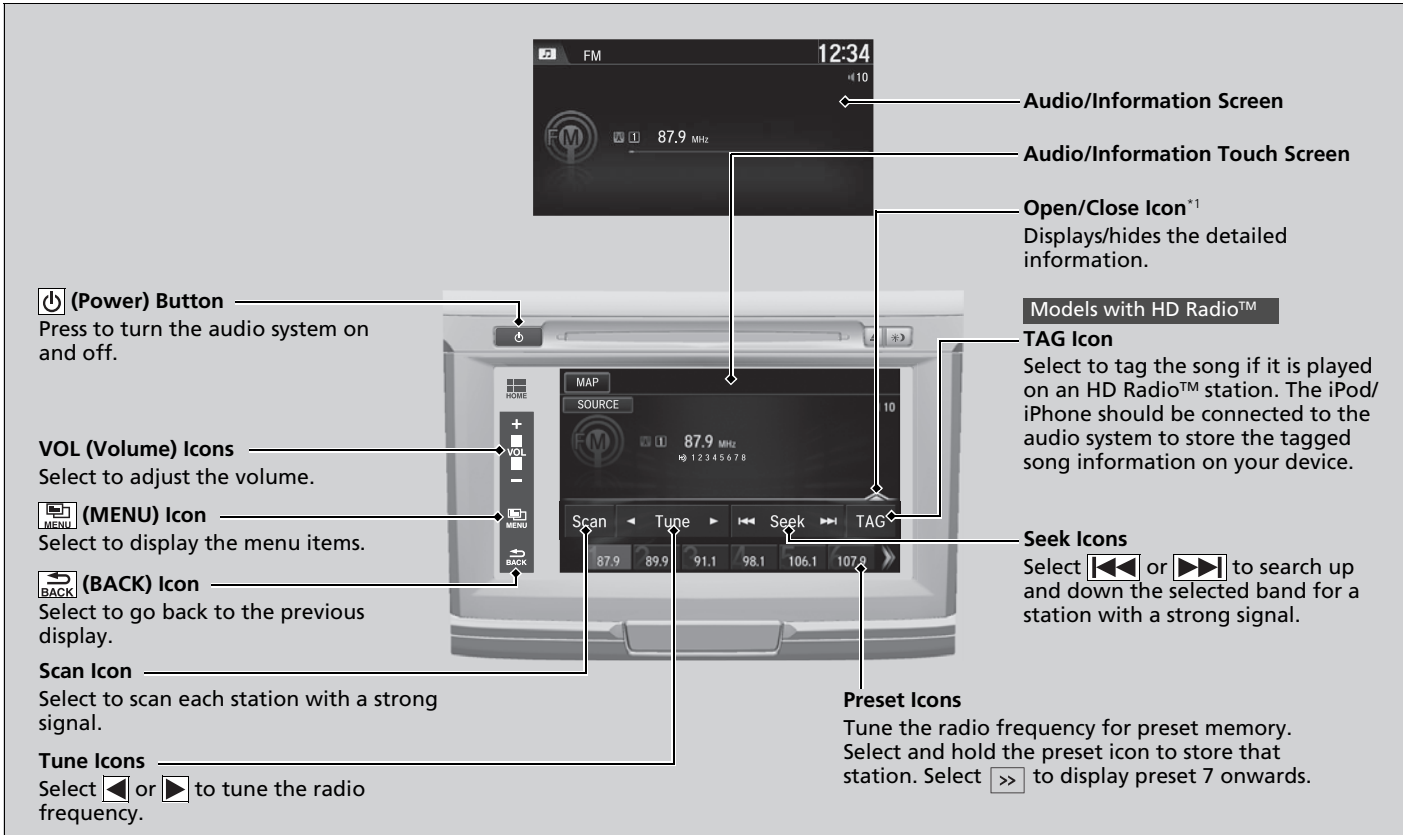
- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

Climate Control Commands*1

- *Climate Control on*
- *Climate Control off*
- *Fan Speed <1-7>*
- *Temperature max heat*
- *Temperature max cool*
- *Temperature <57-87> degrees*
- *Defrost on*
- *Defrost off*
- *Air conditioner on*
- *Air conditioner off*
- *More*
- *Climate control automatic*
- *Vent*
- *Dash and floor*
- *Fan speed up*
- *Fan speed down*
- *Floor vents*
- *Floor and defrost*
- *Temperature up*
- *Temperature down*

*1: Models with navigation system

Playing AM/FM Radio



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Continued

Preset Memory

To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.
Audio Remote Controls P. 190

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory.

Models with HD Radio™
If the audio system has the memory capacity, the tagged song information can be stored in it.

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and "Arc" logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or BACK.

Models with HD Radio™

Tag Song to Device

If your iPod/iPhone is connected to the USB port, you can store the TAG information. If the iPod/iPhone is not connected to the audio system, the information is stored in the audio system temporarily, then once the device is connected to the system, data is transferred to the iPod/iPhone.
To store the TAG information to the iPod/iPhone or the audio system, select **TAG**.

Models with HD Radio™

Tagged Song List

Displays the TAG information saved to the audio system.
1. Select MENU.
2. Select **Song Tag List**.

Continued

Models with HD Radio™

HD Subchannel

Displays the subchannel list when an HD Radio™ station is selected while listening to an FM station.

1. Select [MENU].
2. Select **HD Radio Subchannel**.
3. Select the channel number.

Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Select MENU.

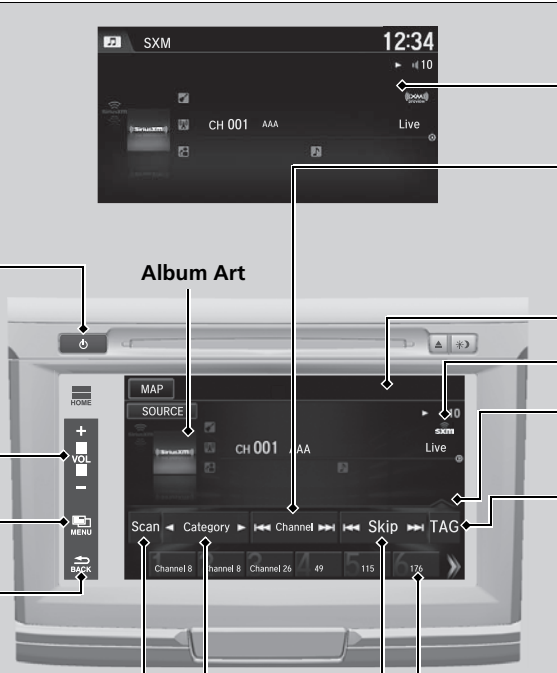
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or BACK.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*



Audio/Information Screen

Channel Icons
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to the previous or next channel.
Select and hold to rapidly skip 10 channels at a time.

(Power) Button
Press to turn the audio system on and off.

Album Art

Audio/Information Touch Screen

Station Art

Open/Close Icon*1
Displays/hides the detailed information.

VOL (Volume) Icons
Select to adjust the volume.

TAG Icon
Select to tag a song played at a SiriusXM® Radio channel. The iPod/iPhone should be connected to the audio system to store the tagged song information on your device.

(MENU) Icon
Select to display the menu items.

(BACK) Icon
Select to go back to the previous display.

Scan Icon
Select to scan each channel.

Skip Icons
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change section in the channel.
Select and hold to move rapidly within the section.

Preset Icons
Tune the radio frequency for preset memory. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

Category Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to display and select a SiriusXM® Radio category.

*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

* Not available on all models

To Change the Tune Mode

1. Select MENU.
2. Select **Tune Mode**.
3. Select **Channel Mode** or **Category Mode**.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

There may be instances when SiriusXM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.

SiriusXM® Radio stations load in ascending order, which can take about a minute. Once they have loaded you will be able to scroll up or down to make your selections.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 190

Tune Start:
When you change to a preset channel, a song being played on that channel restarts from the beginning with this function. This can be turned on or off from the **Audio settings** screen.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 316

* Not available on all models

Continued

Preset Memory

To store a channel:
1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Select to hold the preset number for the station you want to store.
3. Select **Replace**.

You can also store a channel by the following procedure.
1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

You can store up to four of your preferred music channels per preset.

1. Tune a station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number you want to add a music channel.
▶ A message appears if there are no available presets.
5. Select **Combine**.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*

You can store 12 SiriusXM® channels into the preset memory.

* Not available on all models

Listening to Featured Channels

Suggested channel listing received from SiriusXM® can be displayed and selected.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a channel list.
2. Select the **Channel List** tab.
3. Select the featured channel list title you want to listen to.
▶ The selected channel list of the title is displayed.
4. Select the channel.

Listening to Featured Channels

Up to three featured channels by SiriusXM® can be displayed.

Featured channel lists are at the top of the channel list.

Continued

Replay Function

The system can record up to the last 60 minutes broadcast of your currently tuned channel as well as the last 30 minutes broadcast of preset channels, starting from the moment you turn the vehicle on. If you tuned to preset channel, the system records up to 60 minutes of a broadcast instead of up to 30 minutes. You can rewind and replay the last 30 or 60 minutes of a broadcast.

1. Select [MENU].
2. Select **Playback Position**.
3. Move the gauge to the position you want to replay.

To play or pause on playback mode:

1. Select [MENU].
2. Select **Play/Pause**.

Returning to real-time broadcast

1. Select [MENU].
2. Select **Play Live Broadcast**.

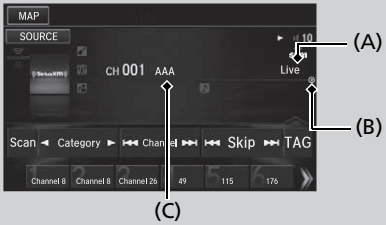
Replay Function

The system starts storing broadcast in memory when the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY [I] or ON [II]*1. You can go back to the program from that point.

You can no longer replay any program once the ignition switch is turned to LOCK [0]*1 as it erases memory.
You can check how long the program has been stored in memory from the audio/information touch screen.

After 30 or 60 minutes of recording the system will automatically start deleting the oldest data.

Audio/Information Touch Screen



(A): Shows how much time the replayed segment is behind the real-time broadcast
(B): Replayed segment
(C): Length stored in memory

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Live Sports Alert

While listening to SiriusXM® Radio, you can receive sports alerts such as scores from your favorite teams.

To set up a favorite team

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.
5. Select **SportFlash Setup (Favorite Team)**.
6. Select a team.

To set up an alert message

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.
5. Select **SportFlash Setup(Interrupt)**.
6. Select **On(one time)** or **On(continue)**.

Continued

Live Sports Alert

The sports alert function at SiriusXM® mode only.

To set up a favorite team

Sports alerts cut in only when SiriusXM® mode is on. Selecting **On(one time)** from the customize settings disables the alert feature next time you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.

Customized Features P. 316

You can also set up a favorite team by the following procedure.

1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select MENU.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ To set up an alert beep

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.
5. Select **SportFlash Setup(Interrupt Beep)**.
6. Select **On**.

■ Traffic and Weather Information

You can receive traffic and weather information.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.
5. Select **Traffic & Weather Setup**.
6. Select the region.
   ▶ When you do not want to receive the information, select **Unset**.

To set up an alert beep

You can also set up an alert beep by the following procedure.

1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select MENU.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.

Traffic and Weather Information

The traffic and weather information function at SiriusXM® mode only.

You can also set up the traffic and weather information by the following procedure.

1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select MENU.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select the **SXM** tab.

Scan

Sample each channel on the selected mode for 10 seconds.

1. Select **Scan**.

2. Select **Scan Channels**.

▶ To only scan preset stations, select **Scan Songs in Presets**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel Scan**.

Tag Song to Device

If your iPhone/iPod is connected to the USB port, you can store the TAG information. If the iPod/iPhone is not connected to the audio system, the information is stored in the audio system temporarily. Once the device is connected to the system, data is transferred to the iPod/iPhone.

To store the TAG information to the iPod/iPhone, or the audio system, select **TAG**.

Tagged Song List

Displays the TAG information saved to the audio system.

1. Select MENU.

2. Select **Tagged Song List**.

Scan

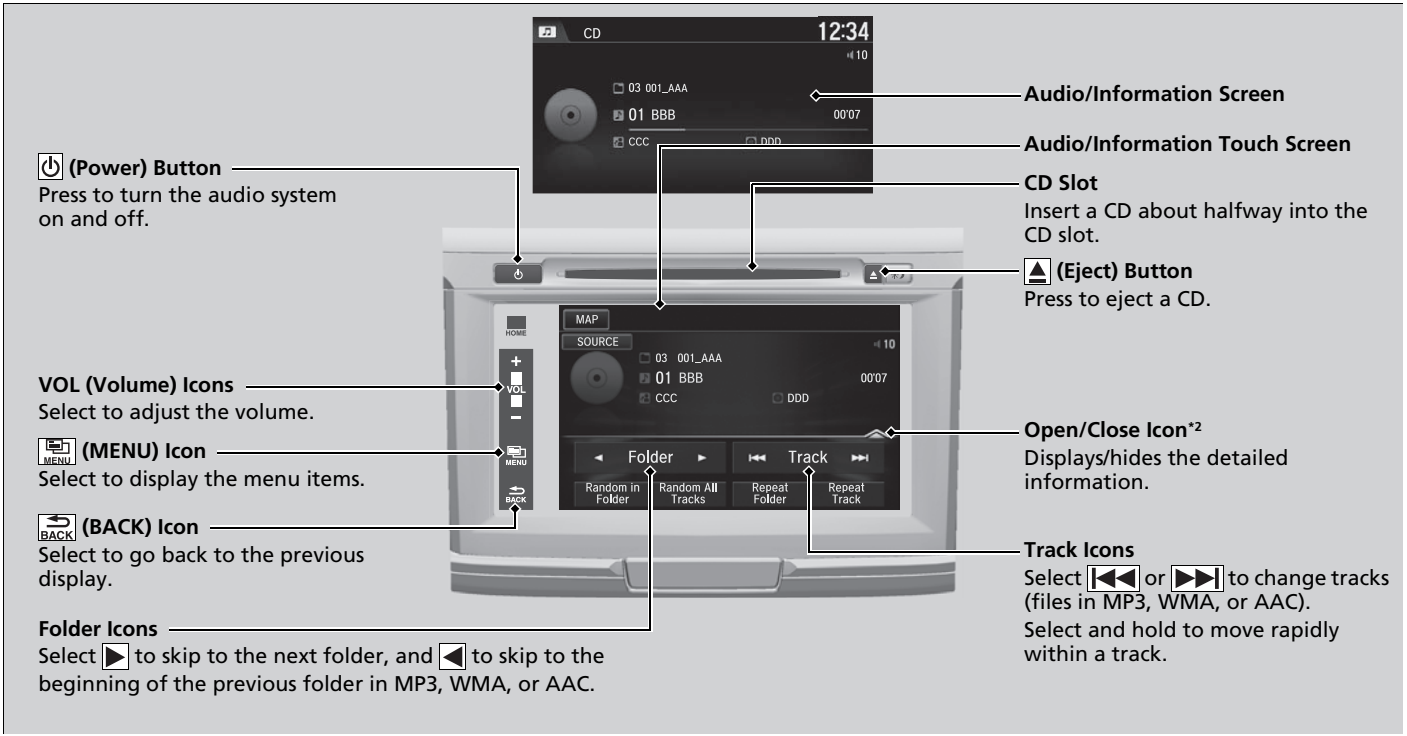
The "Scan Songs in Presets" function is based on TuneScan™ technology of SiriusXM®.

The "Featured Channels" function is based on Featured Favorites™ technology of SiriusXM®.

TuneScan™ and Featured Favorites™ are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

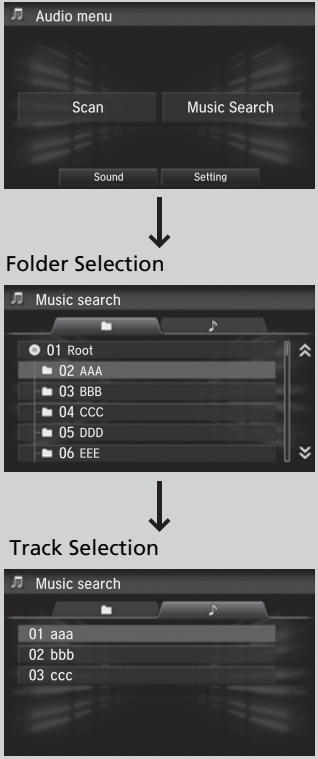
Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs, and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.



*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.
*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Select [MENU] and select **Music Search**.

2. Select a folder.

3. Select a track.

Continued

Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

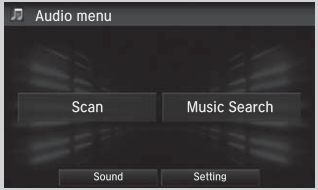
WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:
- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

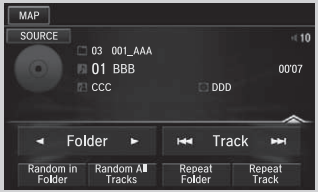
How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



Scan

1. Select MENU.
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.



Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.

To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current track/file.

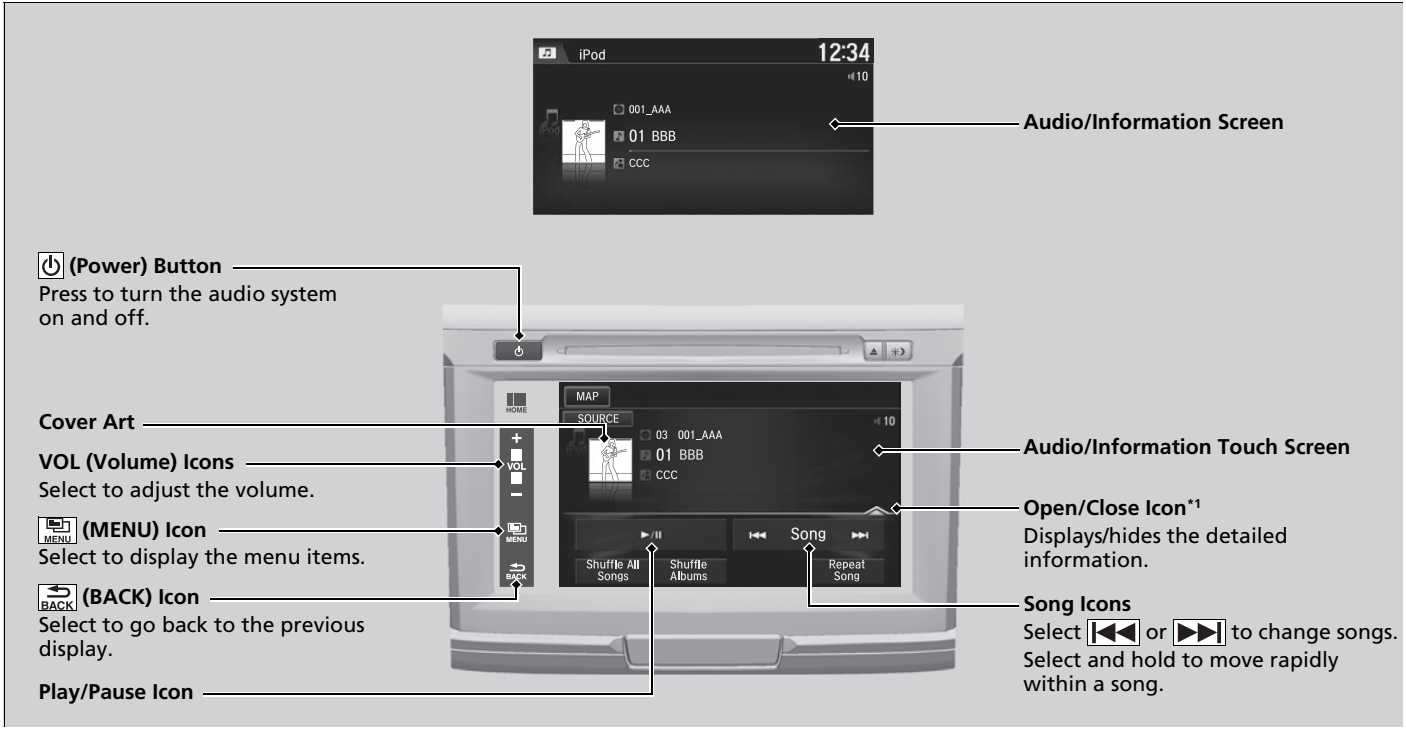
Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

➡ **USB Port(s*)** P. 187



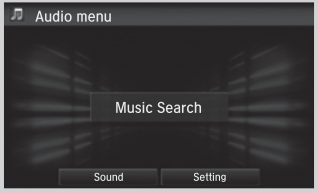
*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Features

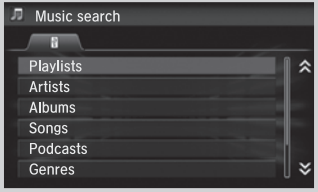
* Not available on all models

Continued

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



Category Selection



Item Selection

1. Select MENU and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information touch screen.
iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 287

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information touch screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the iPod/USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Apple CarPlay.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

Select a play mode.

To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

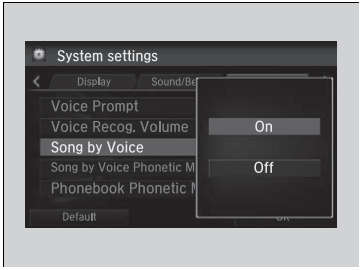
Repeat Song: Repeats the current track.

Models with navigation system

Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Use SBV to search for and play music from your USB flash drive or iPod using voice commands.

■ To enable SBV



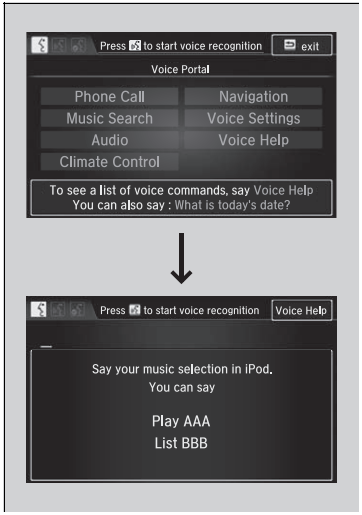
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice**.
6. Select **On** or **Off**.

Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Setting options:

- **On** (factory default): Song By Voice™ commands are available.
- **Off**: Disable the feature.

■ Searching for music using SBV



1. Set the **Song by Voice** setting to **On**.
2. Press the (Talk) button and say *"Music Search"* to activate the SBV feature for the USB flash drive and iPod.
3. Press the button and say a command.
   ▶ Example 1: Say *"(List) 'Artist A'"* to view a list of songs by that artist. Select the desired song to start playing.
   ▶ Example 2: Say *"Play 'Artist A'"* to start playing songs by that artist.
4. To cancel SBV, press the (hang-up/back) button on the steering wheel. The selected song continues playing.

Once you have canceled this mode, you need to press the button and say *"Music Search"* again to re-activate this mode.

Searching for music using SBV

Song By Voice™ Commands List
➔ **Song By Voice Commands** P. 238

NOTE:
Song By Voice™ commands are available for tracks stored on the USB flash drive or iPod.

You can add phonetic modifications of difficult words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands.
➔ **Phonetic Modification** P. 260

SBV is not available when using Apple CarPlay. Use Siri Eyes Free instead.

Continued

Phonetic Modification

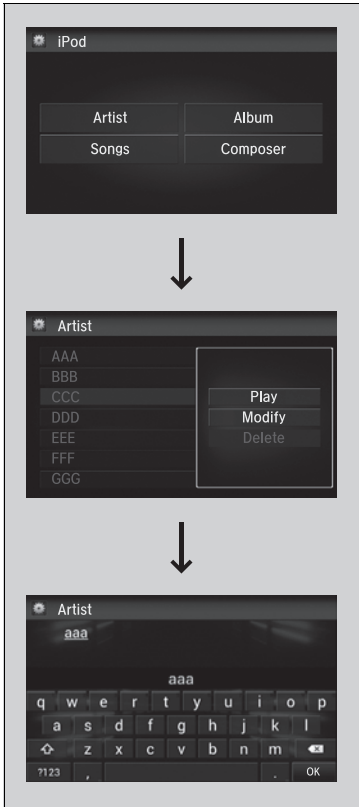
Add phonetic modifications of difficult or foreign words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands when searching for music on the USB flash drive or iPod.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select **New Modification**.
7. Select **USB** or **iPod**.

Phonetic Modification

Phonetic Modification is grayed out when **Song By Voice** is set to **Off**.

You can store up to 2,000 phonetic modification items.



8. Select the item to modify (e.g., **Artist**).
▶ The list of the selected item appears on the screen.

9. Select an entry to modify.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
▶ The listen to the current phonetic modification, select **Play**.
▶ To delete the current phonetic modification, select **Delete**.

10. Select **Modify**.

11. Select the phonetic spelling you want to use (e.g., *"Artist A"*) when prompted.

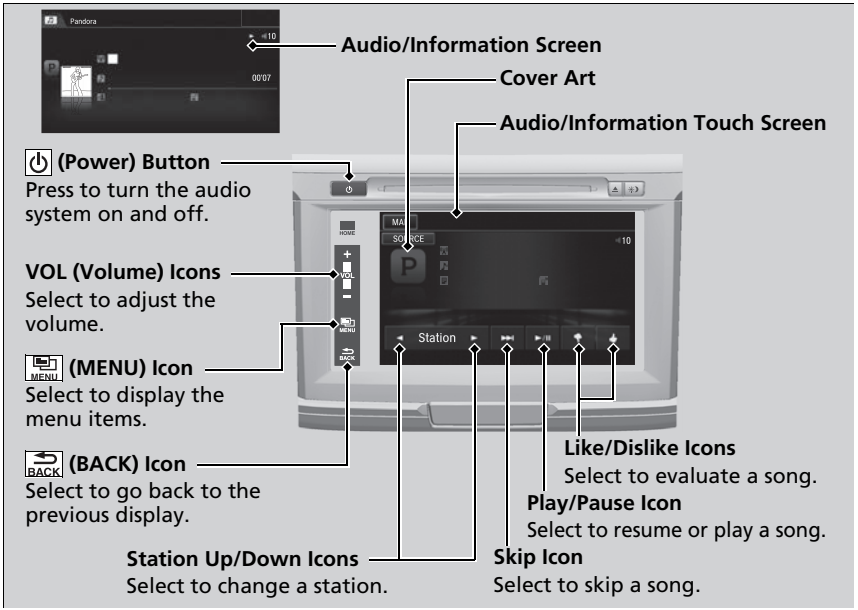
12. Select **OK**.
▶ The artist *"No Name"* is phonetically modified to *"Artist A."* When in the SBV mode, you can press the (Talk) button and use the voice command *"Play 'Artist A'"* to play songs by the artist *"No Name."*

U.S. models

Playing Pandora®*

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from the Pandora® app on a compatible smartphone.
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system, or with an iPhone, you can connect using your USB cable to the USB port.

Phone Setup P. 383
USB Port(s*) P. 187



Playing Pandora®*

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is currently available exclusively in the United States.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit *www.handsfreelink.honda.com*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit *www.pandora.com*. for more information.

Pandora® is free, personalized radio that plays music and comedy you'll love. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, songs, comedians or composers and Pandora® will create a custom station that plays similar tracks. Pandora® also features hundreds of genre stations ranging from Dubstep to Smooth Jazz to Power Workout.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

If your phone is connected to Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, Pandora® is unavailable.
Visit *www.apple.com/ios/carplay/* to check Pandora® compatibility in Apple CarPlay, or *www.android.com/intl/en_us/auto/* for Android Auto.

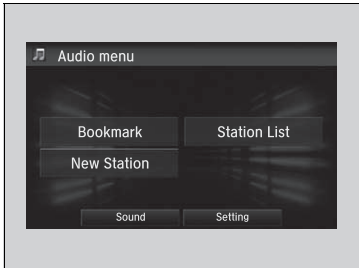
* Not available on all models

Pandora® Menu

You can operate some of the Pandora® menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Bookmark**
- **Station List**
- **New Station**
- **Sound**
- **Setting**

Operating a menu item



1. Select MENU.
2. Select an item.

Pandora® Menu

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information touch screen.
Pandora® P. 288

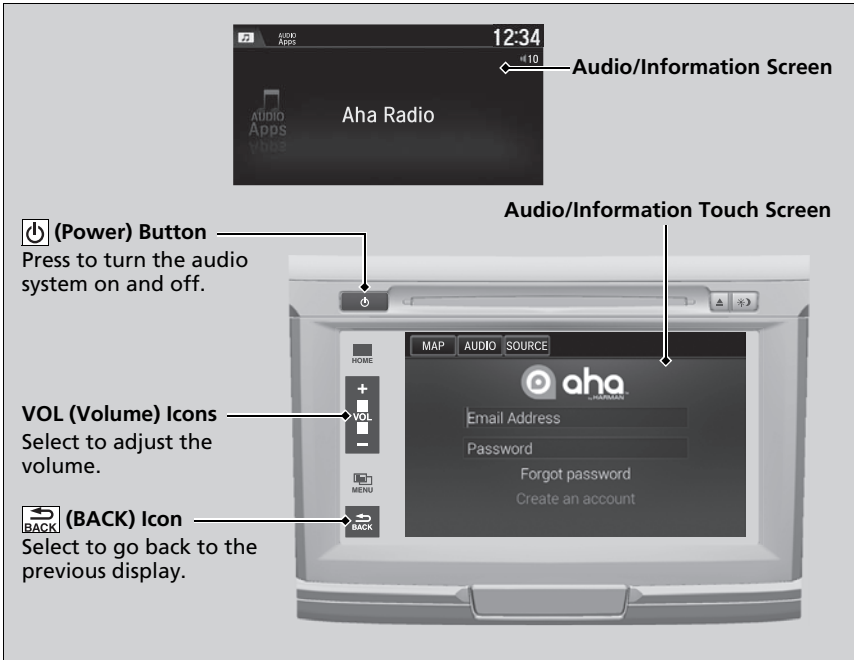
Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

To change stations, activate the Pandora® menu, select **Station List**, and then select a new station. It also changes stations on the main Pandora® screen.

Playing Aha™

Aha™ can be displayed and operated on the audio/information touch screen when your smartphone is connected to the audio system by Wi-Fi or through *Bluetooth®* with the HondaLink® app downloaded to your smartphone.

Wi-Fi Connection P. 275
HondaLink® P. 270



Playing Aha™

Aha™ by Harman is a cloud-based service that organizes your favorite web content into live radio stations. You can access podcasts, internet radio, location-based services, and audio updates from social media sites.

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

The menu items vary depending on the station you selected.

You must have a previously set up Aha™ account prior to using the service in your vehicle. Visit *www.aharadio.com* for more information.

You want to select another source, select **AUDIO** on the upper left of the screen. The source select screen will appear. Select the source you want.

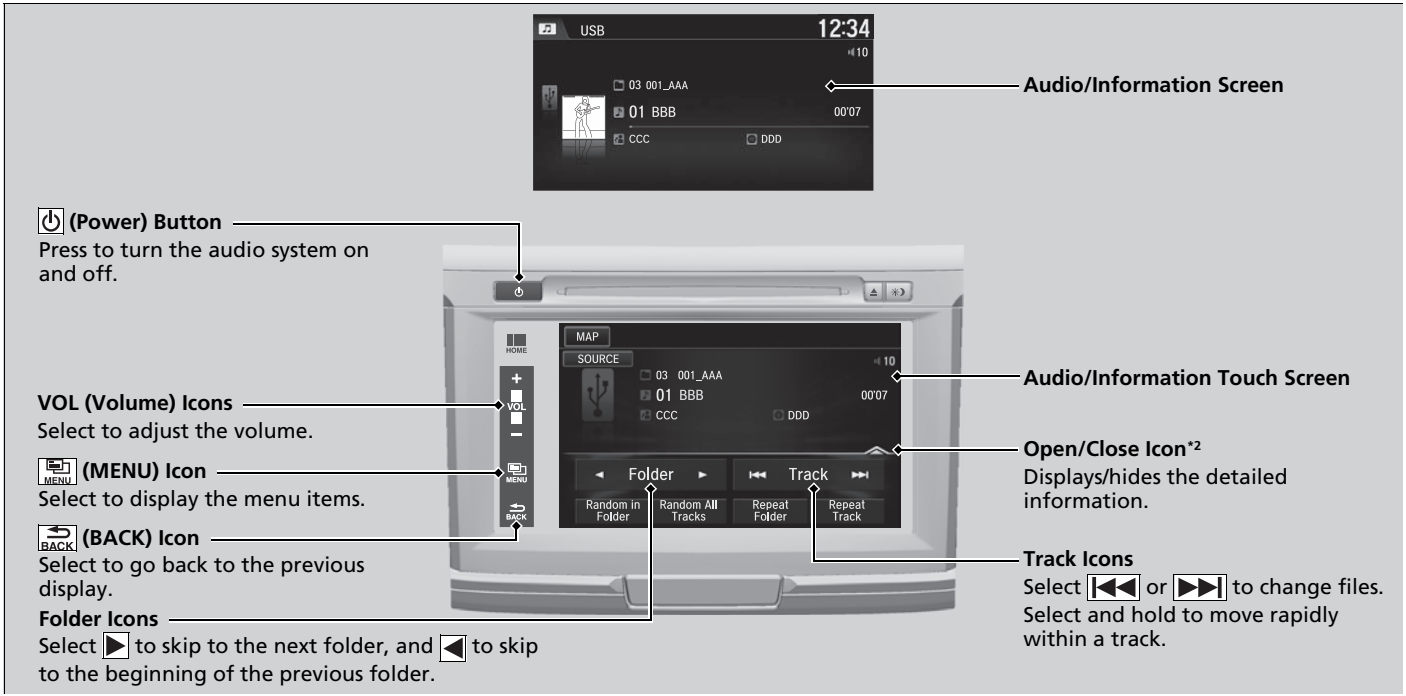
If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, Aha™ can only be accessed when the phone is connected through Wi-Fi.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

➡ **USB Port(s*)** P. 187



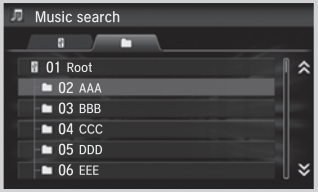
*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.
*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

* Not available on all models

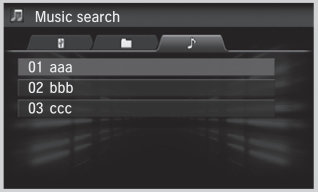
Continued

How to Select a File from the Music Search List

Folder Selection



Track Selection



1. Select MENU and select **Music Search**.
2. Select **Music**.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a track.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.
➡ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 291

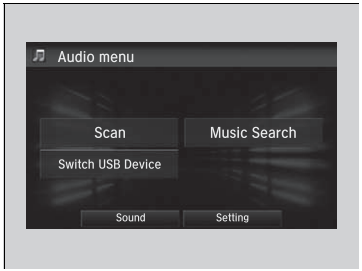
WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information touch screen.
➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 287

Select **Switch USB Device** in the **Audio menu** screen to switch to another USB device.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



Scan

1. Select MENU.
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.

Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.

To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Random/Repeat

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.

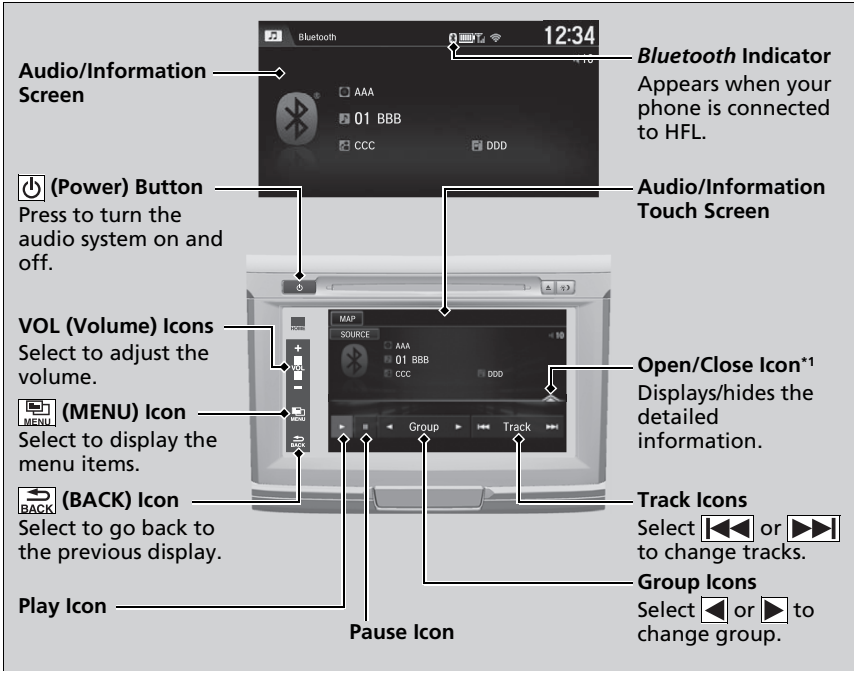
Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 383



*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible.
To check if your phone is compatible, visit *http://www.handsfreelink.com/Honda/*.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect** ♫ from **Bluetooth Device List**.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 383

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

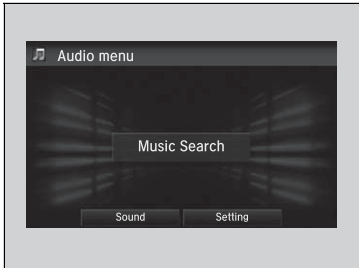
1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
   Phone Setup P. 383
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

Searching for Music



1. Select MENU.
2. Select **Music Search**.
3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
4. Select an item.
   ▶ The selection begins playing.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio menu** screen by the following procedure.
1. Select MENU.
2. Select **Settings**.

Searching for Music

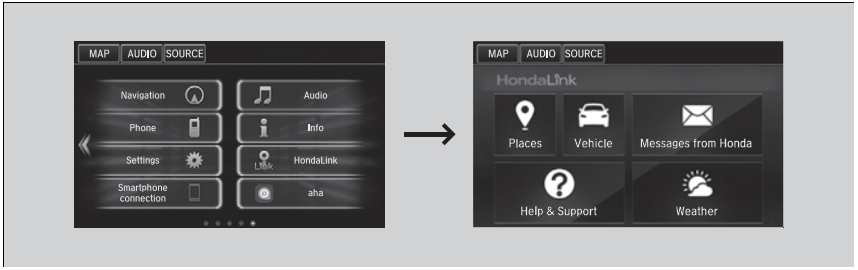
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

HondaLink®

HondaLink® connects you to the latest information from Honda. You can connect your phone wirelessly through Wi-Fi or *Bluetooth*®.

➔ **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 275
➔ **Phone Setup** P. 383

■ HondaLink® Menu



■ Places*

Displays restaurants, gas stations, Honda dealer, and so on. You can also navigate to the found locations via the navigation.

■ Vehicle

Displays instruction messages when the vehicle needs service.

■ Help & Support

Displays tips for vehicle usage, and get support via road side or customer service center.

HondaLink®

The HondaLink® connect app is compatible with most iPhone and Android phones.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, HondaLink® can only be connected through Wi-Fi.

* Not available on all models

■ Messages from Honda
Displays helpful and important information from Honda.

■ Weather
Displays a weekly five-day weather forecast for any location you want. You can change the ZIP Code at any time.

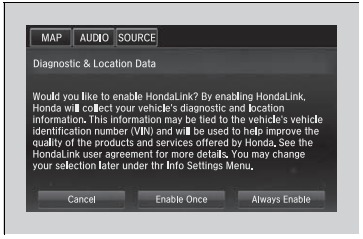
■ To Set Up to Connect HondaLink® Service

Use the following procedure to connect to HondaLink® service.

■ To enable to the HondaLink® service

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock/Info**.
4. Select the **HondaLink** tab.
5. Select **Diagnostic & Location Data**.
6. Select **On**.

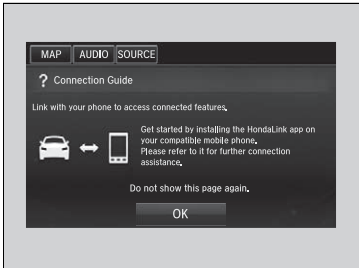
You need to allow the consent of the location service to enable the HondaLink® service.



Enable Once: Allows only one time. (Prompt shows again next time.)
Always Enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

Continued

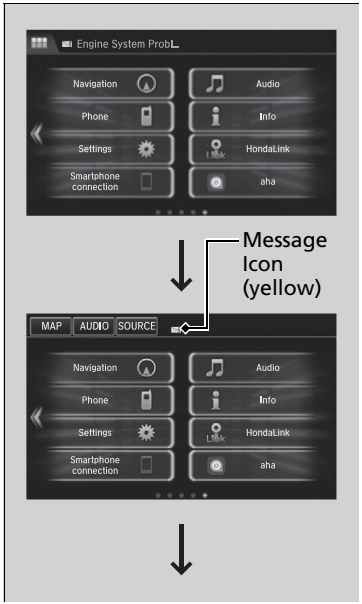
■ To link with HondaLink®



You can see the **Connection Guide** screen after launching HondaLink®. If you do not need this guide, select check-box and select **OK**.

Vehicle Information and Message from Honda Tips

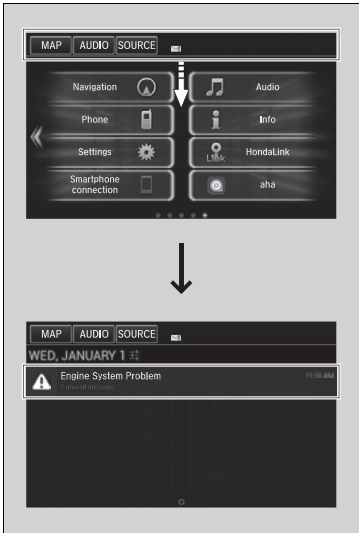
You can check the messages that are received quickly in the shortcut operation.



1. A message appears and notifies you of a new message on the header area.
▶ When the message is received, a notification ring can be heard.

2. A message icon is continuously displayed in the header area until the new message is read.

Continued



3. From the top of the screen, swipe down to see the messages.

4. Select a new message to open.

Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the display audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information touch screen. If your phone has cell hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth/Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
5. Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, then **On**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi Network List**.
   - ▶ Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
   - ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
   - ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.
7. Select **Connect**.
   - ▶ Enter a password for your phone, and select **OK**.
   - ▶ When the connection is successful, the icon is displayed on the list.
8. Select HOME to go back to the home screen.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to setup the Wi-Fi connection.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on **Wi-Fi Network List**. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

Continued

Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

iPhone users

You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via USB, you can use the audio/information touch screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

➔ **USB Port(s*)** P. 187

Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the front USB port. The USB port located in the center console storage will not enable Apple CarPlay operation.

➔ **USB Port(s*)** P. 187

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

➔ **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 279

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

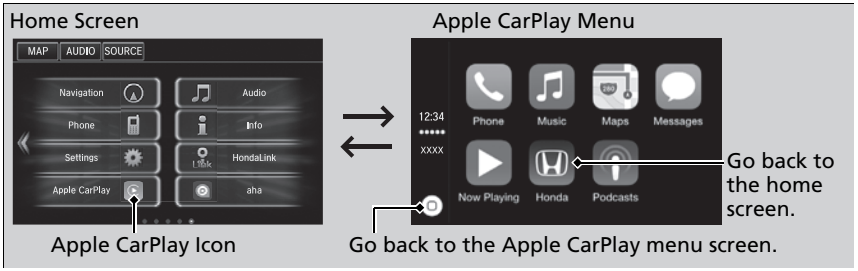
➔ **Phone Setup** P. 383

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Apple CarPlay Menu



■ Phone
Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

■ Messages
Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

■ Music
Play music stored on your iPhone.

■ Maps
Display Apple CarPlay map and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay map) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

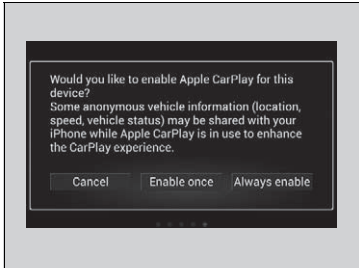
Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via USB, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information touch screen.

Enabling Apple CarPlay



- **Enable Once**: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
- **Always Enable**: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
- **Cancel**: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:
Select **HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Apple CarPlay**

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

Continued

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri Eyes Free

Press and hold the talk button to activate Siri Eyes Free.

(Talk) button:
Press and hold to activate Siri Eyes Free.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

(Hang-up/back) button:
Press to deactivate Siri Eyes Free.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri Eyes Free

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri Eyes Free:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.
- Find a table for four tonight in Chicago.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via USB, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information touch screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen. We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

➡ **USB Port(s*)** P. 187
➡ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 283

Android Auto

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto. *Bluetooth* A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the front USB port. The USB port in the center console storage will not enable Android Auto operation.

➡ **USB Port(s*)** P. 187

To directly access the Android Auto phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Android Auto, calls are only made through Android Auto. If you want to make a call with *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®, turn Android Auto OFF or detach the USB cable from your Android phone.

➡ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 283

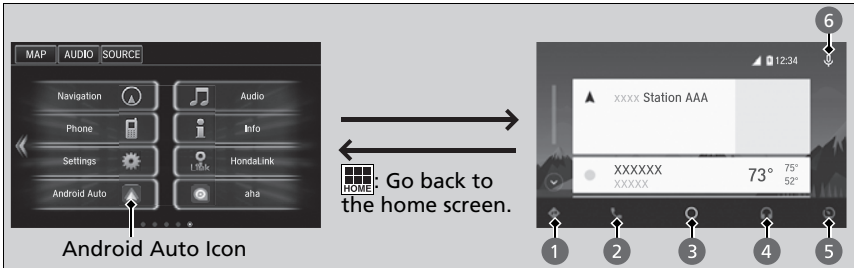
When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use *Bluetooth*® Audio or *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 383

* Not available on all models

Continued

Android Auto Menu



❶ Maps (Navigation)
Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

❷ Phone (Communication)
Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

❸ Google Now (Home screen)
Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

❹ Music and audio
Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

❺ Go back to the Home screen

❻ Voice
Operate Android Auto with your voice.

Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

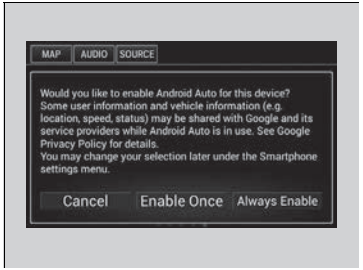
It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

Models with navigation system
Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.
The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via USB, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

Enabling Android Auto



- **Enable Once**: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
- **Always Enable**: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
- **Cancel**: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

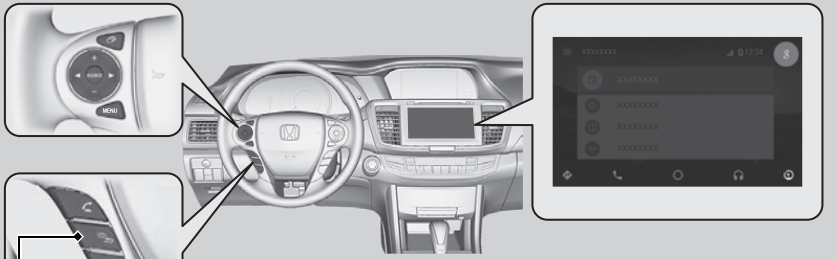
You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Select **HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Android Auto**

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.

Continued

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the talk button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



(Talk) button:
Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

(Hang-up/back) button:
Press to deactivate voice recognition.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

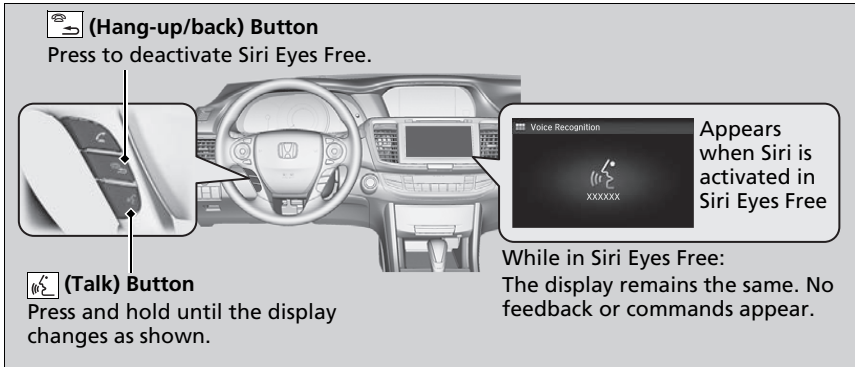
You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 383

Using Siri Eyes Free



Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

CD Player

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
Unplayable File	Track/file format not supported	• Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.
Bad Disc **Please Check Owner's Manual** **Push Eject**[*1] **Bad Disc** **Please check Owner's Manual** **Please push eject button**[*2]	Mechanical error	• Press the ⏏ (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared. • Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again. ➲ **Protecting CDs** P. 293 • If the error message reappears, press the ⏏ button, and pull out the disc. • Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. • If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
Mecha Error		
Bad Disc **Please Check Owner's Manual**	Servo error	
Check Disc	Disc error	• Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed. ➲ **Protecting CDs** P. 293
Heat Error	High temperature	• Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.

*1:Models with one display
*2:Models with two displays

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB Error	Appears when there is a problem with the USB adapter unit. Check if the device is compatible with the USB adapter unit.
Incompatible USB Device Please Check Owner's Manual*1 **The connected USB device has a problem. See Owner's Manual*2**	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unsupported Version	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.
No Data	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

*1:Models with one display
*2:Models with two displays

U.S. models

Pandora®

If an error occurs while playing Pandora®, you may see the following error messages.
If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Models with one display

Error Message	Solution
Incompatible USB Device Please Check Owner's Manual	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
There is no station list in the device. Please add the station list to your device.	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station.
Music licenses force us to limit the number of tracks you may skip each hour.	Appears when you try to skip a song or select **Dislike** over the predetermined number of times in an hour.
Unable to save rating. Unable to save bookmark or Unable to skip	Appears when the commanded operation is failed. Try again later.
No data	Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device.
PANDORA ver unsupport	Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version.
PANDORA system maintenance	Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later.
Cannot connect to PANDORA when stopped. Check your mobile phone	Appears when Pandora® is unable to play music. Check your device.
Unable to play PANDORA. Please try again later.	• Appears when data transfer has failed 10 times. Try again later. • Appears when condition for transferring data is unstable. Try again later.
Unable to play PANDORA. Music Licensing restricts play in this area.	Appears when Pandora® service is not available in the current area.

Models with two displays

Error Message	Solution
To begin listening, select a station from the Stations list.	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station.
Unable to rate track. Please try again. Skip limit reached.	Appears when you try to skip a song or select **Like/Dislike** over the predetermined number of times in an hour.
Unable to play Pandora. Please try again later. Unable to retrieve a track explanation. Please try again later. Unable to create bookmark. Please try again later.	Appears when the commanded operation has failed. Try again later.
No Data	Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device.
Pandora App version is not supported	Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version.
Unable to complete the operation. Please try again later.	Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later.
Unable to connect Pandora. When stopped, check your mobile phone	Appears when Pandora® is unable to play music. Check your device.
Unable to connect Pandora. When stopped, check your mobile phone	Appears when Pandora® app is not installed on your device. Install Pandora® app to the your device.

Models with two displays

Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message*1	Solution
Unfortunately, ** has stopped.**	Error has occurred within app, select **OK** on the screen to close the app.
**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?**	App is not responding. Select **Wait** if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select **OK** to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform **Factory Data Reset**. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 339

*1:****part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

SiriusXM® Radio Service*

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

1. You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription. To see the ID in the screen, select **Channel 0**.
2. Have your radio ID ready, and either call or visit the SiriusXM® website to subscribe.

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

Switch to the SiriusXM® mode by using the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel, or through the audio/information touch screen, and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

SiriusXM® Radio Display Messages

Channel Not Subscribed:
You are not subscribed to the channel selected.
Subscription Updated:
SiriusXM® radio is receiving information update from the network.
Channel Not Available:
No such channel exists, or the artist or title information is unavailable.
No Signal:
The signal is too weak in the current location.
Antenna Disconnected:
The SiriusXM® antenna is disconnected. Contact a dealer.

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

Contact Information for SiriusXM® Radio:
- US: SiriusXM® Radio at *www.siriusxm.com* or 1-800-852-9696
- Canada: SiriusXM® Canada at *www.xmradio.ca*, or 1-877-209-0079

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

The SiriusXM® satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:
- In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle.
- In tunnels
- On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
- Large items carried on the roof rack

* Not available on all models

Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labeled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.

CDs with MP3, WMA, or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

Recommended CDs

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

■ Protecting CDs

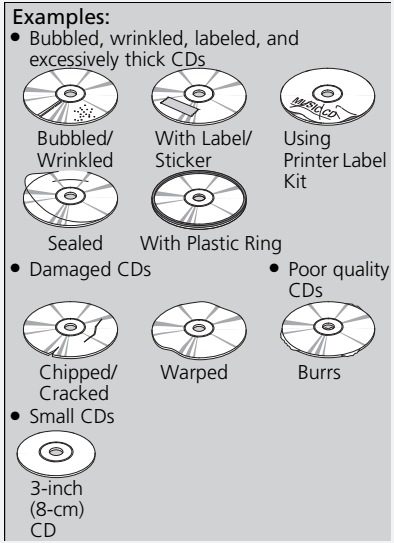
Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the center to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

Protecting CDs

NOTICE

Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.



Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) launch in 2012*1
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) launch in 2010*2
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) launch in 2012*1
iPod touch (1st to 4th generation) launch in 2010*2
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4S/iPhone 5*1
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5c/iPhone 5s*2

*1:Models with one display
*2:Models with two displays

USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Models with two displays

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

Continued

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA’S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL DAMAGES (OTHER THAN AS MAY BE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN CASES INVOLVING PERSONAL INJURY) EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF FIVE DOLLARS ($5.00). THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Models with two displays

About Open Source Licenses

To see the open source license information, follow these steps.

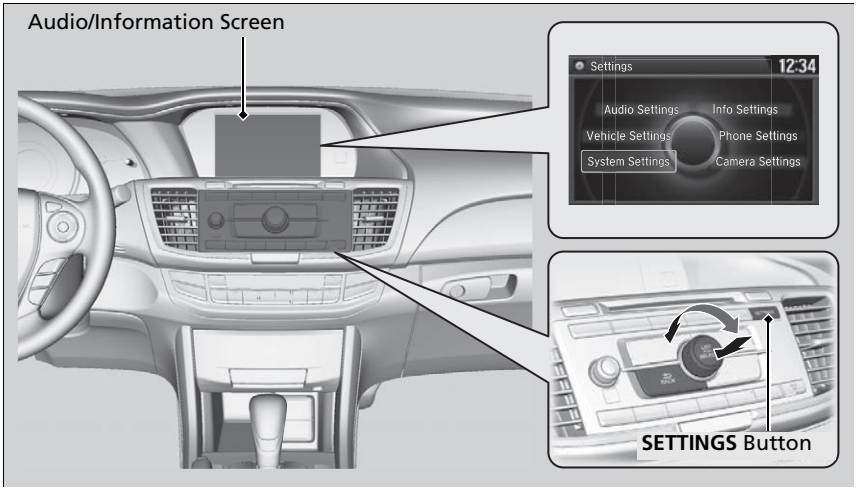
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**, then open the **Others** tab.
4. Select **Detail Information**.
5. Select **About device**.
6. Select **Legal information**.
7. Select **Open source licenses**.

Models with one display

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON II *1, press the **SETTINGS** button, rotate to select a setting item, and press .



*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.

Automatic transmission/CVT models

- Shift to P.

Manual transmission models

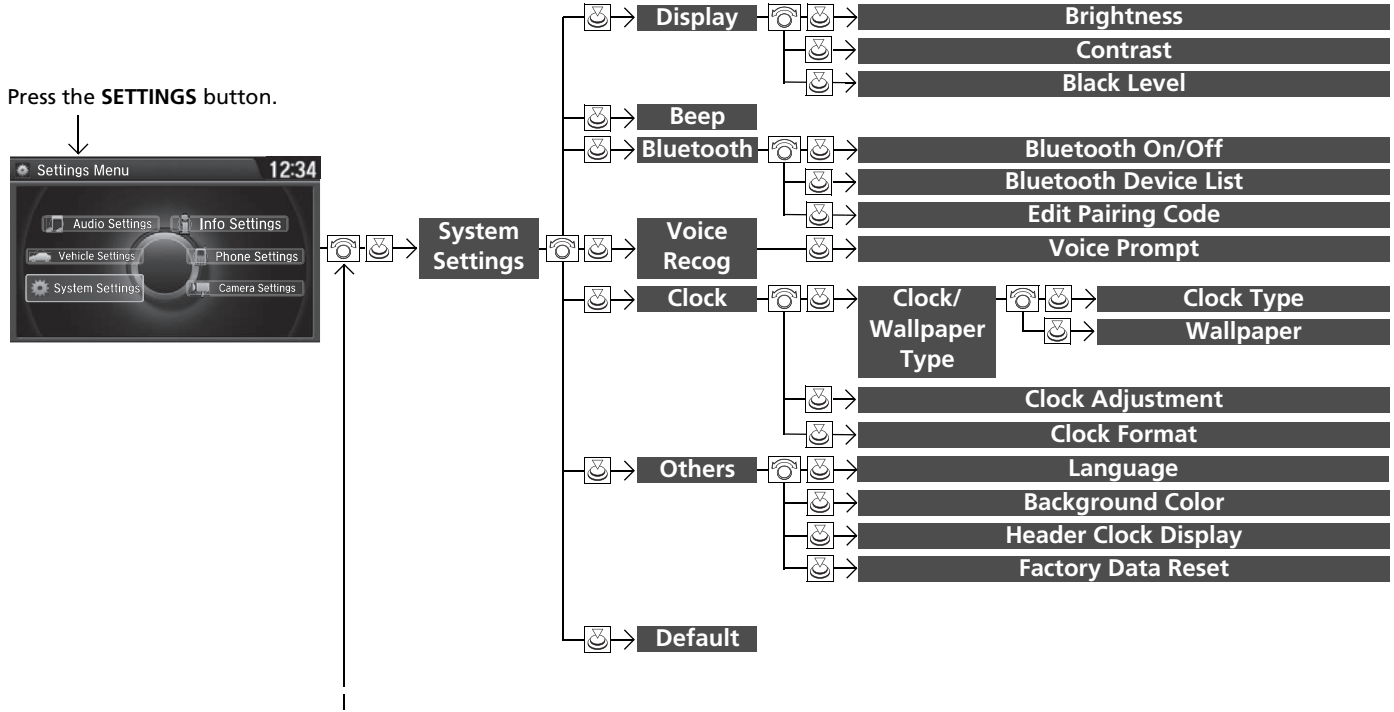
- Set the parking brake.

How to customize

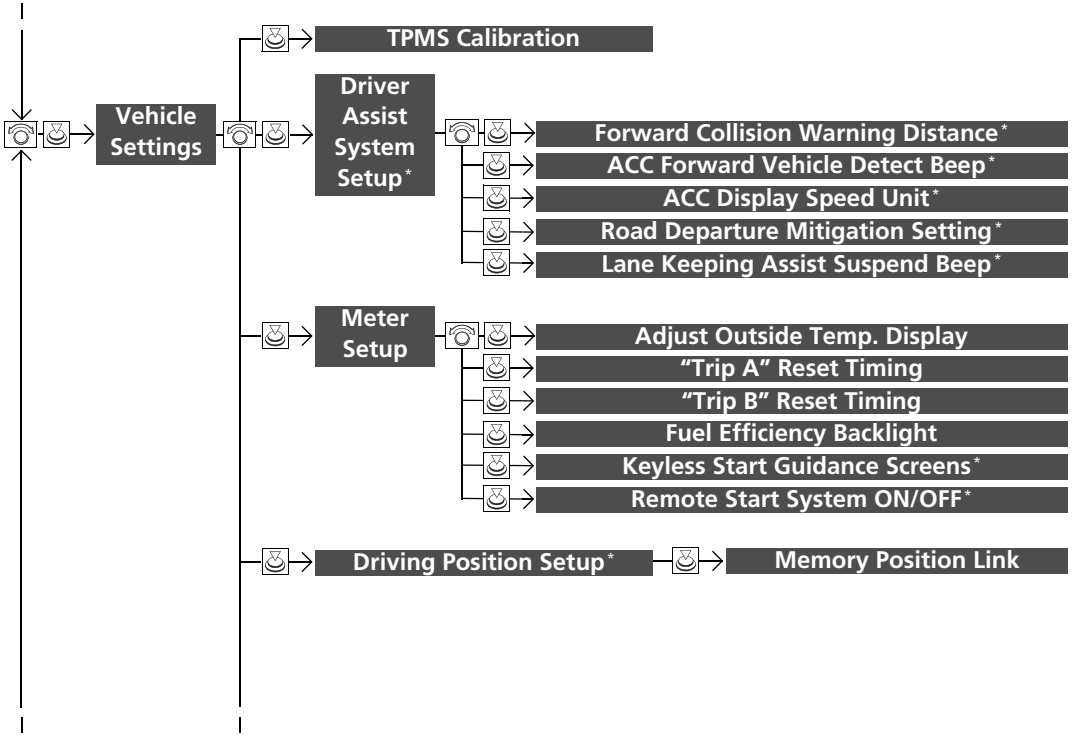
To customize other features, rotate , and press .

➔ **List of customizable options** P. 304

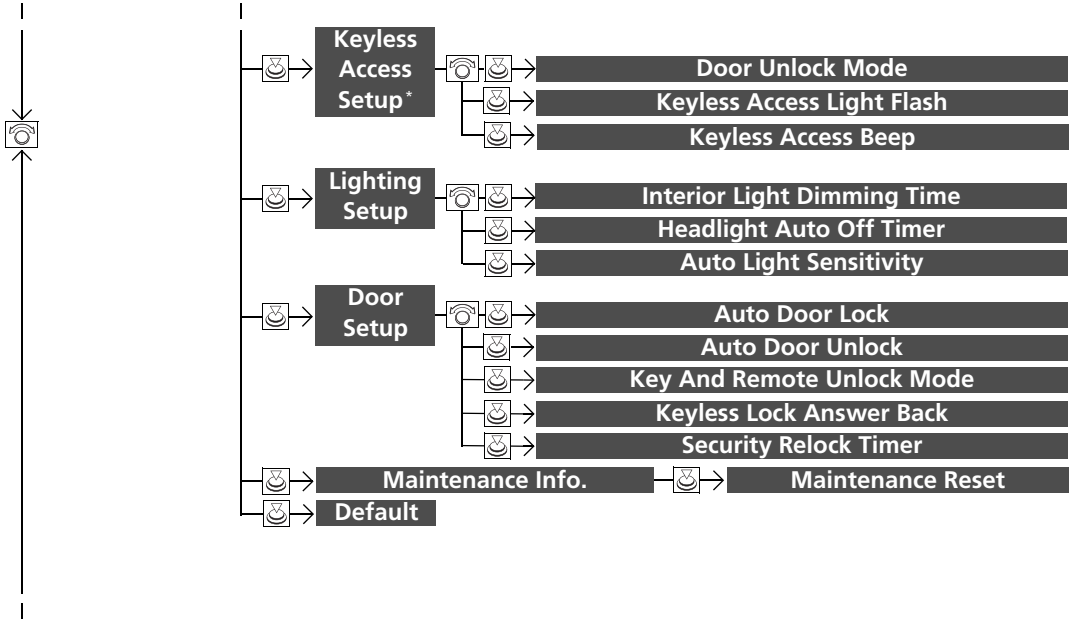
■ Customization flow



Continued

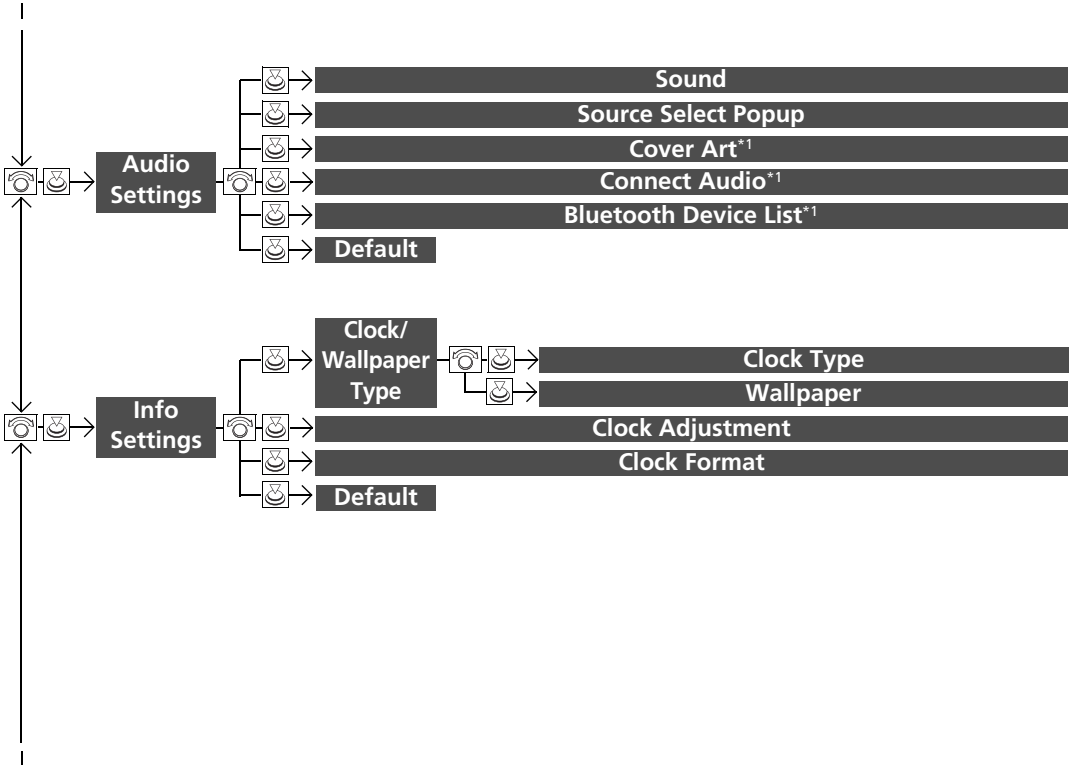


* Not available on all models

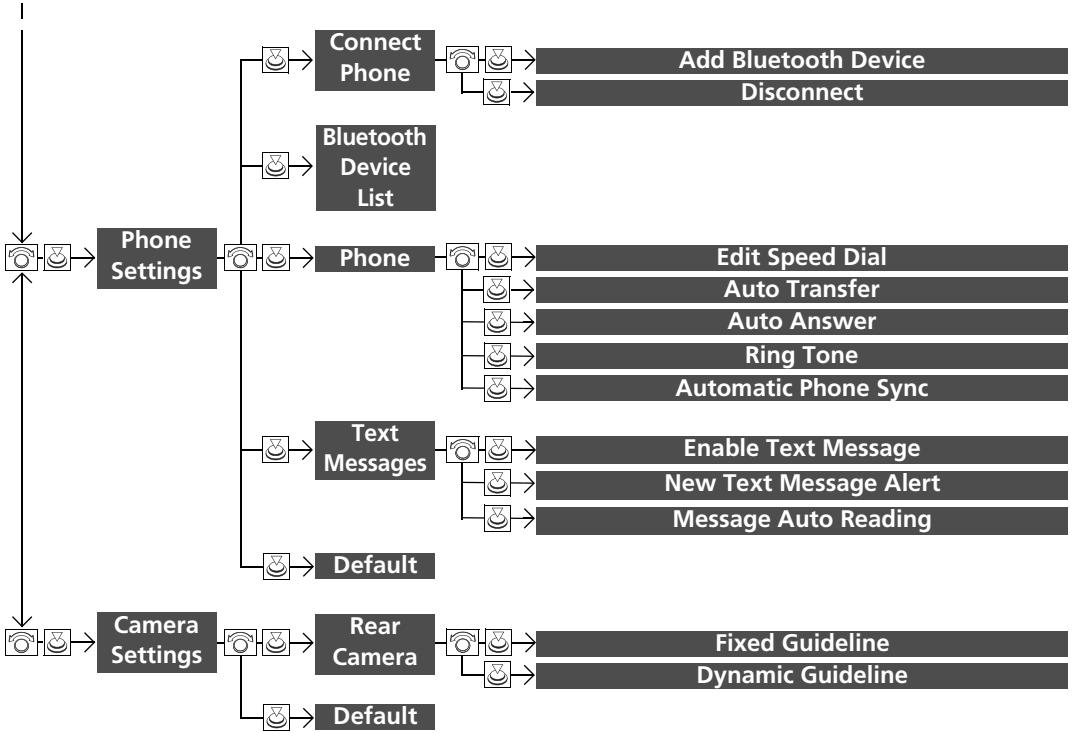


* Not available on all models

Continued



*1: May change depending on your currently selected source.


Phone Settings
Connect Phone
Add Bluetooth Device
Disconnect
Bluetooth Device List
Phone
Edit Speed Dial
Auto Transfer
Auto Answer
Ring Tone
Automatic Phone Sync
Text Messages
Enable Text Message
New Text Message Alert
Message Auto Reading
Default
Camera Settings
Rear Camera
Fixed Guideline
Dynamic Guideline
Default

Continued

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	**Display**	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
	Beep		Selects whether a beeper sounds when you operate the selector knob.	**On***1**/Off**
	Blue-tooth	**Bluetooth On/Off**	Turns the *Bluetooth*® on and off.	**On***1**/Off**
		Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a security PIN. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350	—
		Edit Pairing Code	Changes a pairing code. ➡ **To change the pairing code setting** P. 352	**Random/Fixed***1
	Voice Recog	**Voice Prompt**	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	**Beginner***1**/Expert**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	**Clock**	**Clock/ Wallpaper Type**	**Clock Type**	Changes the clock display type.	**Analog/Digital**[*1]**/ Small Digital/Off**
			Wallpaper	• Changes the wallpaper type. • Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. • Deletes an image file for a wallpaper. ➡ **Wallpaper Setup** P. 195	**Blank/Galaxy**[*1]**/ Metallic/Add New**
		Clock Adjustment		Adjusts Clock. ➡ **Clock** P. 114	—
		Clock Format		Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	**12H**[*1]**/24H**
	Others	**Language**		Changes the display language.	**English**[*1]**/French/ Spanish**
		Background Color		Changes the background color of the audio/ information screen.	**Blue**[*1]**/Amber/Red/ Green**
		Header Clock Display		Selects whether the clock display comes on.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 315	**Yes/No**
	Default			Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **System Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	**TPMS Calibration**		Cancels/Calibrates the TPMS.	**Cancel**[*1]/**Calibrate**
	Driver Assist System Setup[*]	**Forward Collision Warning Distance**[*]	Changes at which distance the CMBS™ alerts.	**Long**/**Normal**[*1]/**Short**
		ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep[*]	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	**On**/**Off**[*1]
		ACC Display Speed Unit[*]	Changes the speed unit for ACC on the multi-information display.	**mph**[*1]/**km/h** (U.S.) **mph/km/h**[*1] (Canada)
		Road Departure Mitigation Setting[*]	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	**Normal**[*1]/**Wide**/ **Warning Only**
		Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep[*]	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**On**/**Off**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	**Meter Setup**	**Adjust Outside Temp. Display**	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-5°F ~ ±0°F**[*1] **~ +5°F** (U.S.) **-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C** (Canada)
		"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	**With Refuel/IGN Off/ Manually Reset**[*1]
		"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	**With Refuel/IGN Off/ Manually Reset**[*1]
		Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Keyless Start Guidance Screens[*]	Displays the push button start guidance when conditions are met to change power mode.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Remote Start System ON/ OFF[*]	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Driving Position Setup[*]	**Memory Position Link**	Changes the driver's seat position to a stored setting.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	**Keyless Access Setup***	**Door Unlock Mode**	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	**Driver Door Only*1/ All Doors**
		Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to blink when you unlock/lock the doors.	**On*1/Off**
		Keyless Access Beep	Sets the beeper sound or not when you grab either front door handle.	**On*1/Off**
	Lighting Setup	**Interior Light Dimming Time**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60seconds/ 30seconds*1/ 15seconds**
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60seconds/ 30seconds/ 15seconds*1/ 0seconds**
		Auto Light Sensitivity	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	**Max/High/Mid*1/ Low/Min**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	**Door Setup**	**Auto Door Lock**	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]/ **Shift from P**[*2]/**Off**
		Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	**All Doors When Driver's Door Opens**[*1]/ **All Doors When Shifted to Park**[*2]/**All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off**
		Key And Remote Unlock Mode	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote.	**Driver Door**[*1]/**All Doors**
		Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90seconds**/ **60seconds**/ **30seconds**[*1]
	Maintenance Info.	**Maintenance Reset**	Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service.	—
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Vehicle Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting
*2:Automatic transmission/CVT models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio Settings	**Sound**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 197	**-6** ~ **C**[*1] ~ **+6** (**Bass**, **Treble** and **SUBW**[*]), **-9** ~ **C**[*1] ~ **+9** (**Fader** and **Balance**), **Off**/**Low**/**Mid**[*1]/**High** (**SVC**)
	Source Select Popup	Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when the **AUDIO** button is pressed.	**On**/**Off**[*1]
	iPod, USB, or Pandora®* mode **Cover Art**	Turns on and off the cover art display.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
	Bluetooth® Audio or Pandora®* mode **Connect Audio**	Connects, disconnects or pairs a *Bluetooth*® Audio device to HFL.	—
	Bluetooth® Audio or Pandora®* mode **Bluetooth Device List**	Edits or deletes a *Bluetooth*® Audio device paired to HFL.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Audio Settings** group as default.	**Yes**/**No**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info Settings	**Clock/ Wall-paper type**	**Clock Type**	See **System Settings** on P. 304 to P. 305	
		Wallpaper		
	Clock Adjustment			
	Clock Format			
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Info Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Settings	**Connect Phone**		Pairs a new phone to HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350	—
	Bluetooth Device List		Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350	—
	Phone	**Edit Speed Dial**	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➡ **Speed Dial** P. 361	—
		Auto Transfer	Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.	**On***1**/Off**
		Auto Answer	Sets whether to automatically answer an incoming call after about four seconds.	**On/Off***1
		Ring Tone	Selects the ring tone.	**Fixed/Mobile Phone***1**/Off**
		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	**On***1**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Settings	**Text Messages**	**Enable Text Message**	Turns the text message function on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		New Text Message Alert	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text message.	**On/Off**[*1]
		Message Auto Reading	Sets the system to automatically read an incoming text message. • **On**- A text message is always read aloud. • **Off**- A text message is not read aloud. • **Auto**- A text message is read aloud only when driving.	**On/Off/Auto**[*1]
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Phone Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

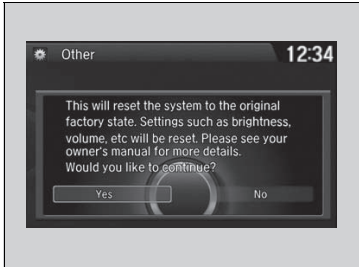
Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Camera Settings	**Rear Camera**	**Fixed Guideline**	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the dynamic guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Camera Settings** group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Other**, then **Factory Data Reset**.
   ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
3. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press to reset the settings.
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press again to reset the settings.
   ▶ The confirmation message will appear. Press to select **OK**.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

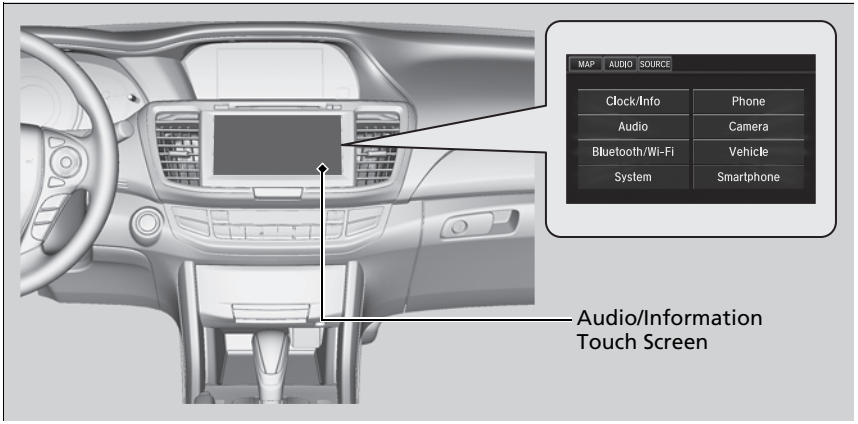
The following settings will be reset:
- Audio preset settings
- Phonebook entries
- Other display and each item settings.

Models with two displays

Use the audio/information touch screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

With the ignition switch in ON II*1, select **Settings**, then select a setting item.



*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.

Automatic transmission/CVT models

- Shift to P.

Manual transmission models

- Set the parking brake.

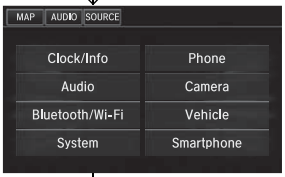
To customize other features, select **Settings**.

➔ **List of customizable options** P. 325

■ Customization flow

Select HOME.

Select **Settings**.

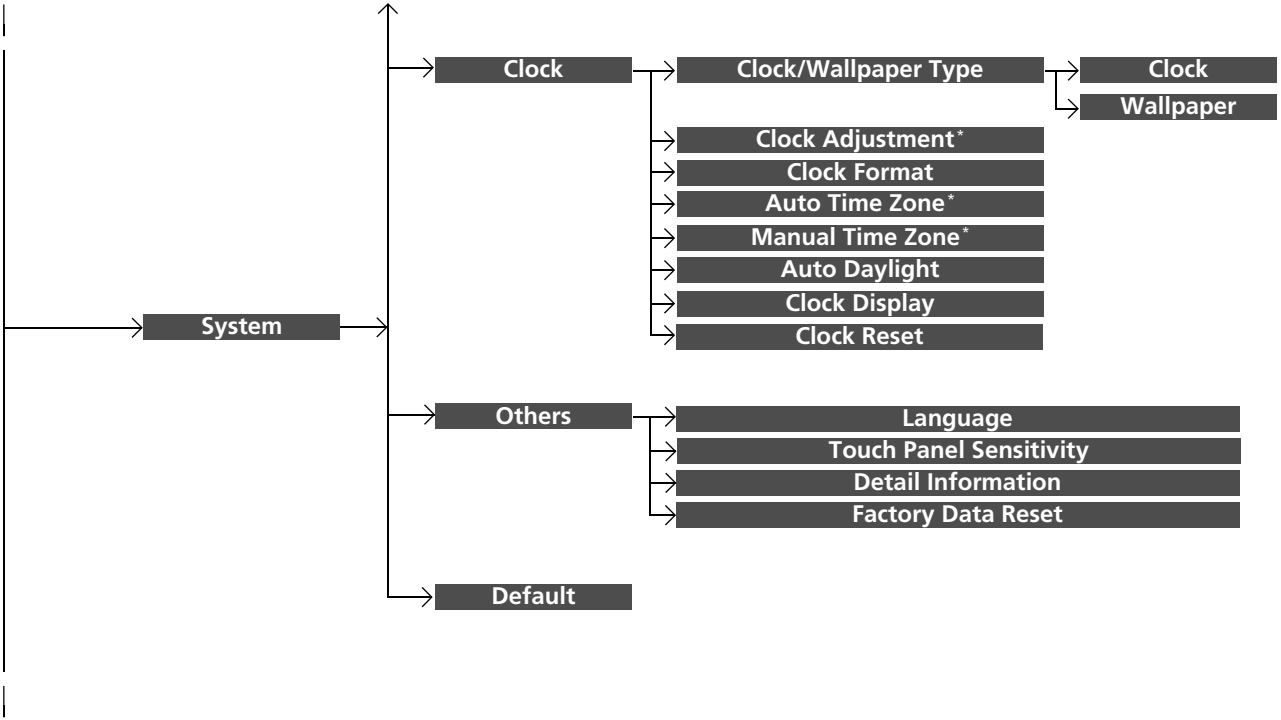


System

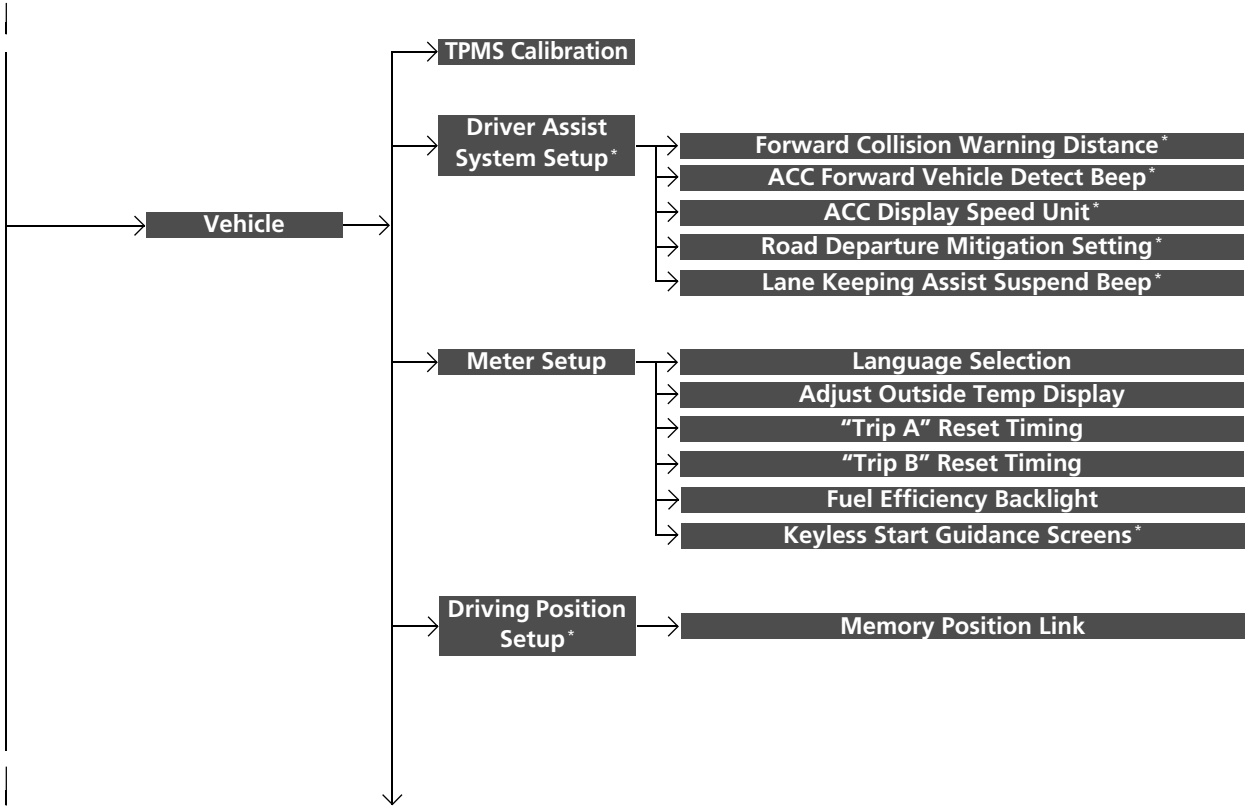
- **Display**
  - **Display Settings**
    - **Brightness**
    - **Contrast**
    - **Black Level**
  - **Background Color**
    - **Blue Green**
    - **Blue**
    - **Amber**
    - **Red**
    - **Violet**
- **Sound/Beep**
  - **Guidance Volume**
  - **Text Message Volume**
  - **Voice Recog. Volume**
  - **Verbal Reminder***
  - **Beep Volume**
- **Voice Recog**
  - **Voice Prompt**
  - **Voice Recog. Volume**
  - **Song by Voice***
  - **Song by Voice Phonetic Modification***
  - **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**
  - **Automatic Phone Sync**
  - **One Press Voice Operation**

* Not available on all models

Continued

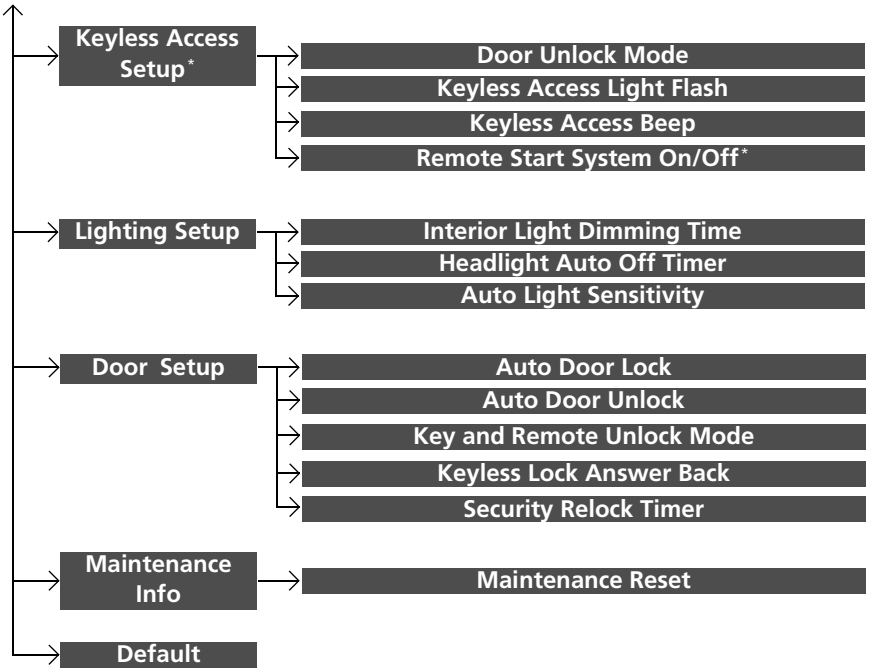


* Not available on all models

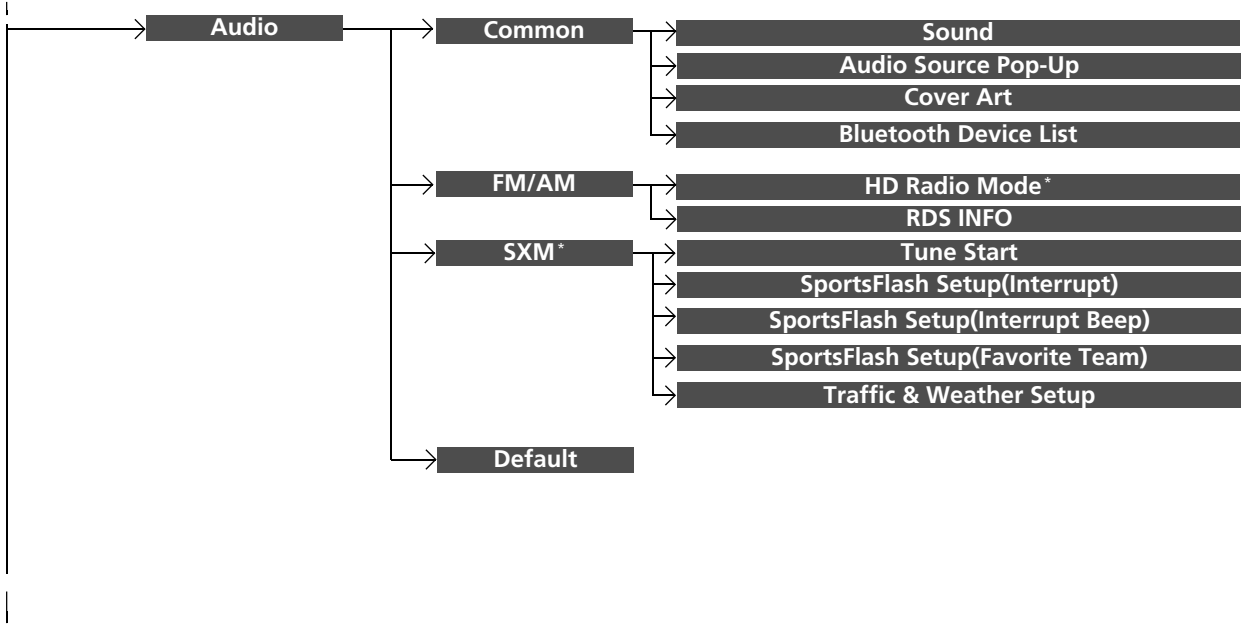


* Not available on all models

Continued

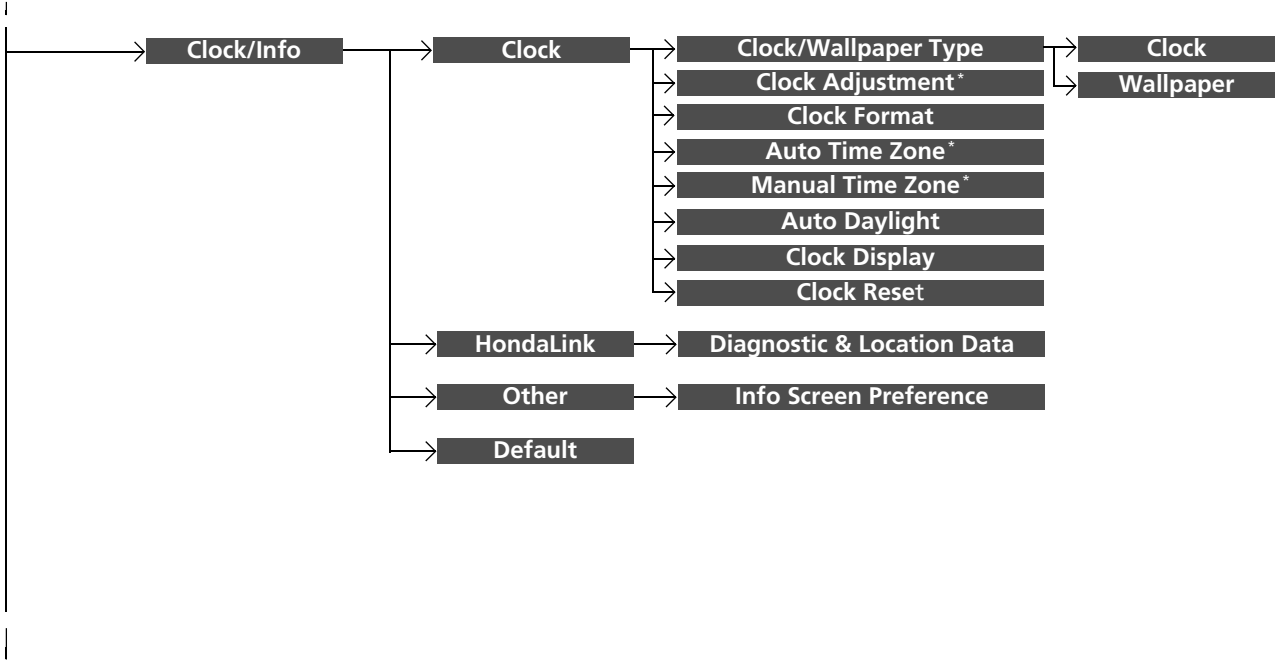


* Not available on all models

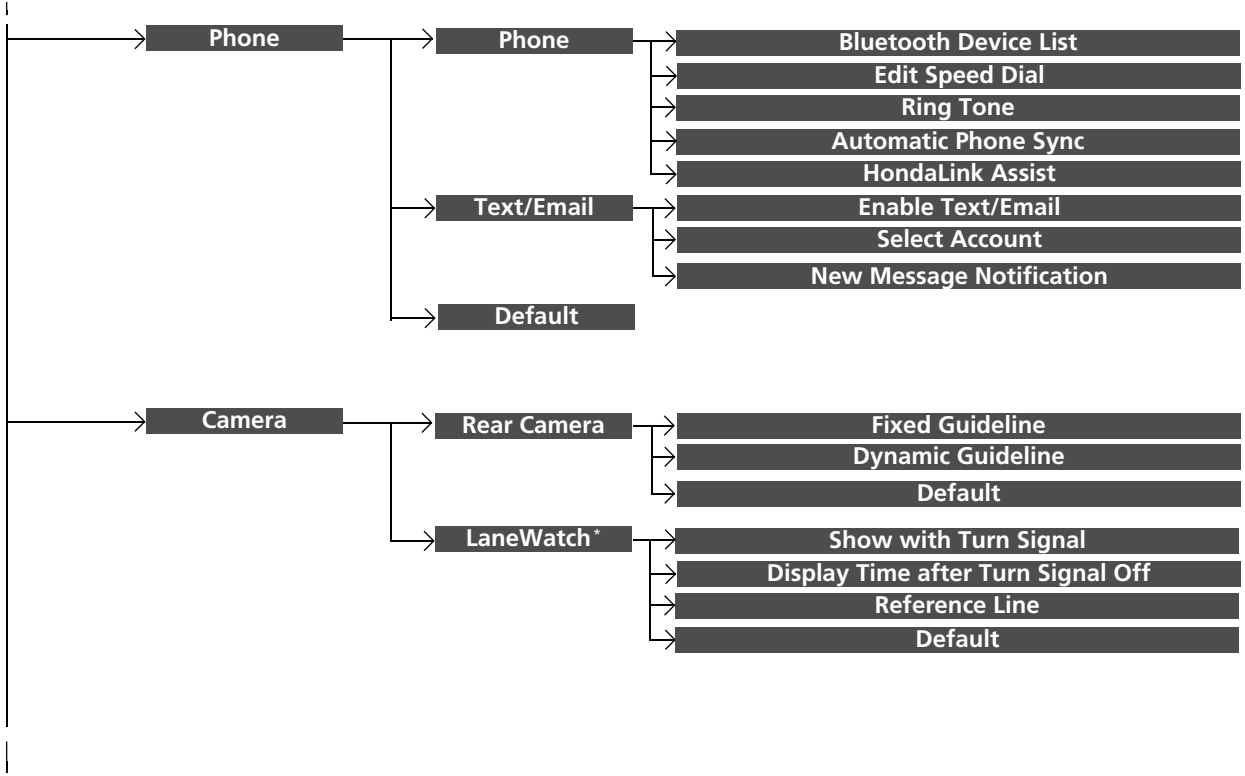


* Not available on all models

Continued

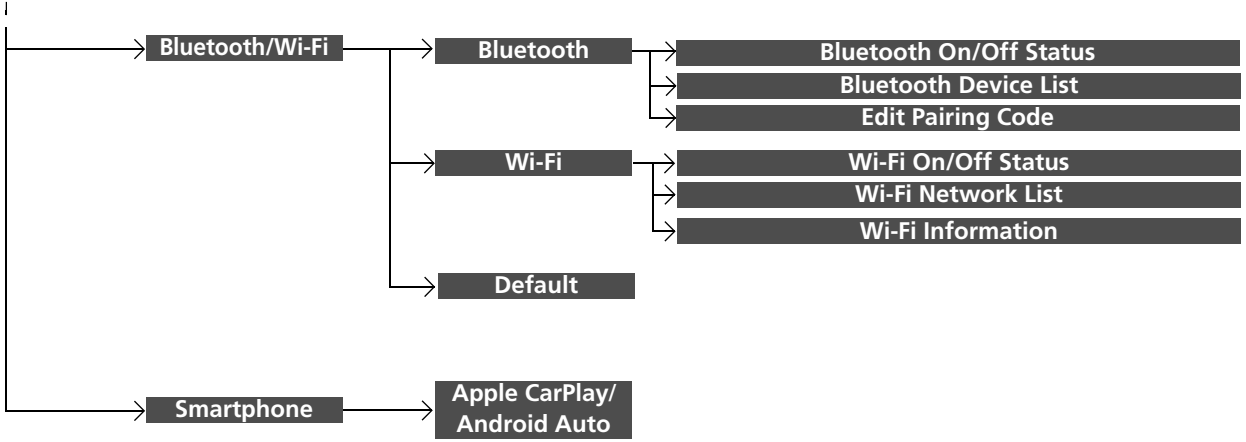


* Not available on all models



* Not available on all models

Continued


Bluetooth/Wi-Fi
Bluetooth
Bluetooth On/Off Status
Bluetooth Device List
Edit Pairing Code
Wi-Fi
Wi-Fi On/Off Status
Wi-Fi Network List
Wi-Fi Information
Default
Smartphone
Apple CarPlay/
Android Auto

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
System	Display	Display Settings	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information touch screen.	—
			Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information touch screen.	—
			Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information touch screen.	—
		Background Color		Changes the background color of the audio/information touch screen.	**Blue Green/Blue**[*1]**/Amber/Red/Violet**
	Sound/Beep	Guidance Volume		Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	**1~6**[*1]**~11**
		Text Message Volume		Changes the text/e-mail message reading volume.	**1~6**[*1]**~11**
		Voice Recog. Volume		Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	**1~6**[*1]**~11**
		Verbal Reminder*		Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Beep Volume		Changes the beep volume.	**Off/1/2**[*1]**/3**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	**Voice Recog**	**Voice Prompt**	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Voice Recog. Volume	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	**1~6**[*1]**~11**
		Song by Voice[*]	Turns the Song By Voice™ on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Song by Voice Phonetic Modification[*]	Modifies a voice command for music stored in the system or an iPod/iPhone. ➡ **Phonetic Modification** P. 260	—
		Phonebook Phonetic Modification	Modifies a voice command for the phonebook. ➡ **Phonebook Phonetic Modification** P. 392	—
		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	**On/Off**
		One Press Voice Operation	Changes the setting of the touch screen operation when using the voice operation.	**On/Off**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group		Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	**Clock**	**Clock/ Wallpaper Type**	**Clock**	Changes the clock display type.	**Analog/Digital/ Small Digital*1/Off**
			Wallpaper	• Changes the wallpaper type. • Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. • Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	**Galaxy*1/Metallic/ Blank**
		Clock Adjustment*		Adjusts clock.	—
		Clock Format		Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	**12H*1/24H**
		Auto Time Zone*		Automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones.	**On*1/Off**
		Manual Time Zone*		Changes the time zone manually.	—
		Auto Daylight		Select **On** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock to daylight savings time. Select **Off** to cancel this function.	**On*1/Off**
		Clock Display		Selects whether the clock display comes on.	**On*1/Off**
		Clock Reset		Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	**Others**	**Language**	Changes the display language.	**English**[*1]**/French/ Spanish**
		Touch Panel Sensitivity	Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**High/Low**[*1]
		Detail Information	Displays the Android setting items.	—
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 339	**Yes/No**
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **System** settings group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	**TPMS Calibration**		Cancels/Calibrates the TPMS.	**Cancel**[*1]**/Calibrate**
	Driver Assist System Setup[*]	**Forward Collision Warning Distance**[*]	Changes distance the CMBS™ alerts.	**Long/Normal**[*1]**/ Short**
		ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep[*]	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	**On/Off**[*1]
		ACC Display Speed Unit[*]	Changes the speed unit for ACC on the multi-information display.	**mph**[*1]**/km/h** (U.S.) **mph/km/h**[*1] (Canada)
		Road Departure Mitigation Setting[*]	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	**Normal**[*1]**/Wide/ Warning Only**
		Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep[*]	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**On/Off**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Meter Setup**	**Language Selection**	Changes the displayed language on the multi-information display.	**English**[*1]**/French/ Spanish**
		Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-5°F ~ ±0°F**[*1] **~ +5°F** (U.S.) **-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C** (Canada)
		"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	**With Refuel/IGN Off/Manually Reset**[*1]
		"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	**With Refuel/IGN Off/Manually Reset**[*1]
		Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Keyless Start Guidance Screens[*]	Displays the push button start guidance when conditions are met to change power mode.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Driving Position Setup***	**Memory Position Link**	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	**On*1/Off**
	Keyless Access Setup*	**Door Unlock Mode**	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	**Driver Door Only*1/ All Doors**
		Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/ lock the doors.	**On*1/Off**
		Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**On*1/Off**
		Remote Start System On/ Off*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**On*1/Off**
	Lighting Setup	**Interior Light Dimming Time**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60 sec/30 sec*1/ 15 sec**
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60 sec/30 sec/ 15 sec*1/0 sec**
		Auto Light Sensitivity	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	**Max/High/Mid*1/ Low/Min**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Door Setup**	**Auto Door Lock**	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift from P**[*2]**/Off**
		Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	**All Doors When Driver's Door Opens**[*1]**/All Doors When Shift to P**[*2]**/ All Doors with IGN Off/Off**
		Key And Remote Unlock Mode	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote or built-in key.	**Driver Door**[*1]**/All Doors**
		Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90 sec/60 sec/30 sec**[*1]
	Maintenance Info.	**Maintenance Reset**	Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service.	—
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Vehicle** group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting
*2:Automatic transmission/CVT models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	**Common**	**Sound**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➔ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 232	**-6** ~ **0**[*1] ~ **+6** (**BASS** and **TREBLE**), **RR9**~**0**[*1] ~**FR9** (**FADER**), **L9**~[*1] **0**~**R9** (**BALANCE**), **-6** ~ **0**[*1] ~ **+6** (**Subwoofer**)[*], **Off**/**Low**/**Mid**[*1]/ **High** (**Speed Volume Compensation**)
		Audio Source Pop-Up	Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when **Audio** is selected on the home screen.	**On**/**Off**[*1]
		iPod or USB mode [Your selected media] **Cover Art**	Turns the cover art display on and off.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➔ **Phone Setup** P. 383	—
	FM/AM mode **FM/AM**	**HD Radio Mode**[*]	Selects whether the audio system automatically switches to the digital radio waves or receives the analogue waves only.	**Auto**[*1]/**Analog**
		RDS INFO	Turns on and off the RDS information.	**On**[*1]/**Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	SiriusXM® mode **SXM***	**Tune Start**	Turns on and off, starts the song from the beginning as you change preset stations.	**On*1/Off**
		SportsFlash Setup(Interrupt)	Turns on and off the sports alert function.	**Off*1/ On(one time)/ On(continue)**
		SportsFlash Setup(Interrupt Beep)	Causes the system to beep when the sports alert is notified.	**On*1/Off**
		SportsFlash Setup(Favorite Team)	Selects your favorite sports teams. ➡ **Live Sports Alert** P. 249	—
		Traffic & Weather Setup	Selects the region you want to receive the information.	—
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Audio** settings group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Clock/ Info	**Clock**	**Clock/ Wallpaper Type**	**Clock**	See **System** on P. 325	
			Wallpaper		
		Clock Adjustment*			
		Clock Format			
		Auto Time Zone*			
		Manual Time Zone*			
		Auto Daylight			
		Clock Display			
		Clock Reset			
	HondaLink	**Diagnostic & Location Data**		Turns HondaLink® on and off.	**On/Off**
	Other	**Info Screen Preference**		Changes the information screen type.	**Info Top/Info Menu/Off***1
	Default			Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Clock/Info** settings group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	**Phone**	**Bluetooth Device List**	Pairs a new phone to HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ➔ **Phone Setup** P. 383	—
		Edit Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➔ **Speed Dial** P. 389	—
		Ring Tone	Selects the ring tone.	**Fixed/Mobile Phone***1
		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	**On***1**/Off**
		HondaLink Assist	Turns HondaLink Assist on and off.	**On/Off***1
	Text/Email	**Enable Text/Email**	Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.	**On***1**/Off**
		Select Account	Selects a text or e-mail message account.	—
		New Message Notification	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail messages.	**On***1**/Off**
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Phone** settings group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Rear Camera	**Fixed Guideline**	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 496	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the dynamic guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 496	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Rear Camera** setting group as default.	**Yes/No**
	LaneWatch*	**Show with Turn Signal**	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a right turn.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Display Time after Turn Signal Off	Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the center.	**0 second**[*1]**/ 2 seconds**
		Reference Line	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **LaneWatch** group as default.	**Yes/No**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

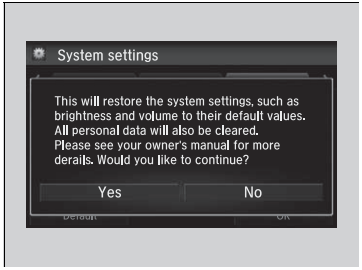
Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth/ Wi-Fi	**Bluetooth**	**Bluetooth On/Off Status**	Selects to change the *Bluetooth*® status.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 383	—
		Edit Pairing Code	Edits a pairing code. ➡ **To change the pairing code setting** P. 384	**Random/Fixed**[*1]
	Wi-Fi	**Wi-Fi On/Off Status**	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	**On/Off**[*1]
		Wi-Fi Network List	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	—
		Wi-Fi Information	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the device.	—
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Bluetooth/Wi-Fi** group as default.	**Yes/No**
Smartphone	**Apple CarPlay/Android Auto**		Sets up the Apple CarPlay/Android Auto connection.	**Enable Once/ Always Enable/ Cancel**

*1:Default Setting

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes**.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
   ▶ After selecting **Yes**, the system will reboot.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, you cannot use HondaLink® because it becomes inactive and you will have to reconnect.

HondaLink® P. 270

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

Important Safety Precautions

Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have the safety information, contact the manufacturer.

Before programming HomeLink, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the garage or gate to prevent potential injury or damage.

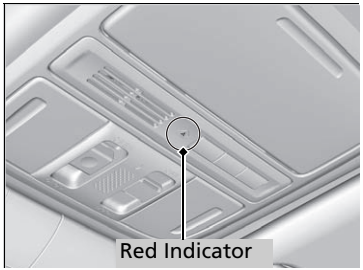
When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage door's path.

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*

Before programming HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an "electronic eye," or other safety and reverse stop features. If it does not, HomeLink may not be able to operate it.

* Not available on all models

Training HomeLink



If it is necessary to erase a previously entered learned code:

- Press and hold the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds, until the red indicator blinks. Release the buttons, and proceed to step 1.
- If you are training the second or third button, go directly to step 1.

The instructions on the next page should work for most gate or garage openers, but may not work for all. For detailed instructions about your specific remote opener, visit *http://www.homelink.com* or call (800)355-3515.

Continued

Training a Button

1. Position the remote transmitter you wish to link 1 to 3 inches (3 - 8 cm) from the HomeLink button you want to program.

2. Press and release the desired HomeLink button. Hold the button on the remote transmitter. Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) change from slowly blinking to constantly on or rapidly blinking? The process should take less than 60 seconds.

YES → **3.** Press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for about a sec. Does the device (garage door opener) work?

- YES → Training Complete
- NO → **4.** Press and hold the HomeLink button again.

NO → Press and release the HomeLink button. Press and release the button on the remote every 2 secs. Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) change from slowly blinking to *constantly on or rapidly blinking*? The process should take less than 60 seconds.

- YES → **3.** Press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for about a sec. Does the device (garage door opener) work?
- NO → **2.** Press and release the desired HomeLink button. Hold the button on the remote transmitter. Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) change from slowly blinking to constantly on or rapidly blinking? The process should take less than 60 seconds.

4. Press and hold the HomeLink button again.

- HomeLink LED is *constantly* on. → **5.** Press and hold the HomeLink button again. The remote-controlled device should operate. Training Complete
- HomeLink indicator *rapidly blinks.* → **A.** The remote has a rolling code. Press the "learn" button on the remote-controlled device (e.g. garage door opener). → **B.** Within 30 secs, press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for 2 secs. → **5.** Press and hold the HomeLink button again. The remote-controlled device should operate. Training Complete

Training HomeLink

Retraining a Button

If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink.

- Standard transmitter: Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.
- Rolling code transmitter: Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.

2. Quickly release the HomeLink button and follow steps 1 - 3 under "Training a Button." You do not need to press and release the HomeLink button again in step 2.

Erasing Codes

To erase all the codes, press and hold the two outside buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink (about 10 to 20 secs). You should erase all codes before selling the vehicle.

If you have any problems, see the device's instructions, visit *www.homelink.com*, or call HomeLink at (800) 355-3515.

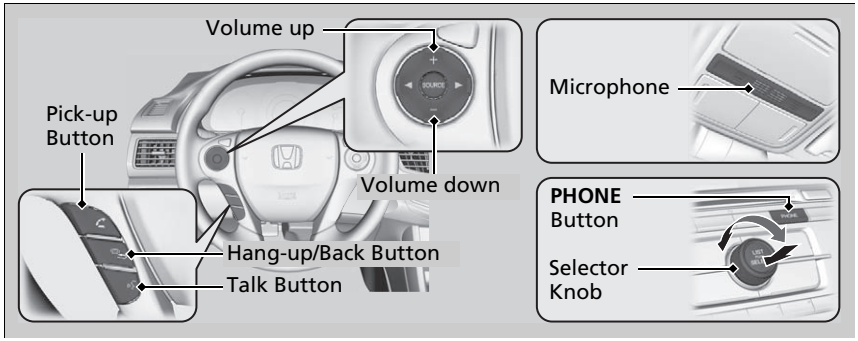
HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Models with one display

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

HFL Buttons



(Pick-up) button: Press to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up/back) button: Press to end a call or to cancel a command.

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag, a phonebook name, or a number.

PHONE button: Press to go directly to the Phone screen.

Selector knob: Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press .

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

- U.S.: Visit *www.handsfreelink.honda.com*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit *www.handsfreelink.ca*, or call 1-888-528 -7876.

To use HFL, the **Bluetooth On/Off** setting must be **On**.
Customized Features P. 298

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag, a phonebook name, or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

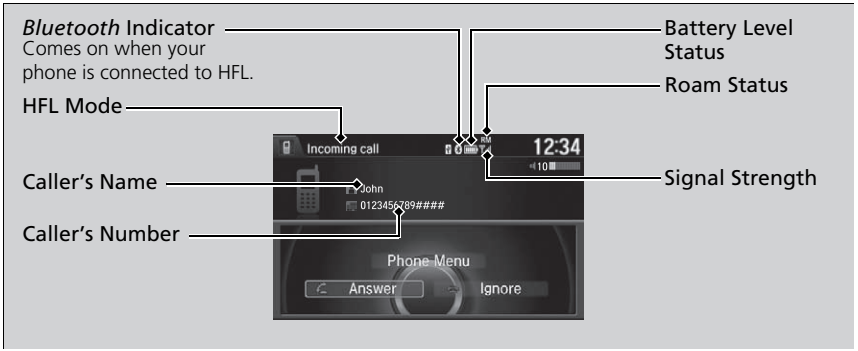
State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

Continued

HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➔ **Speed Dial** P. 361

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language to English, French, or Spanish.

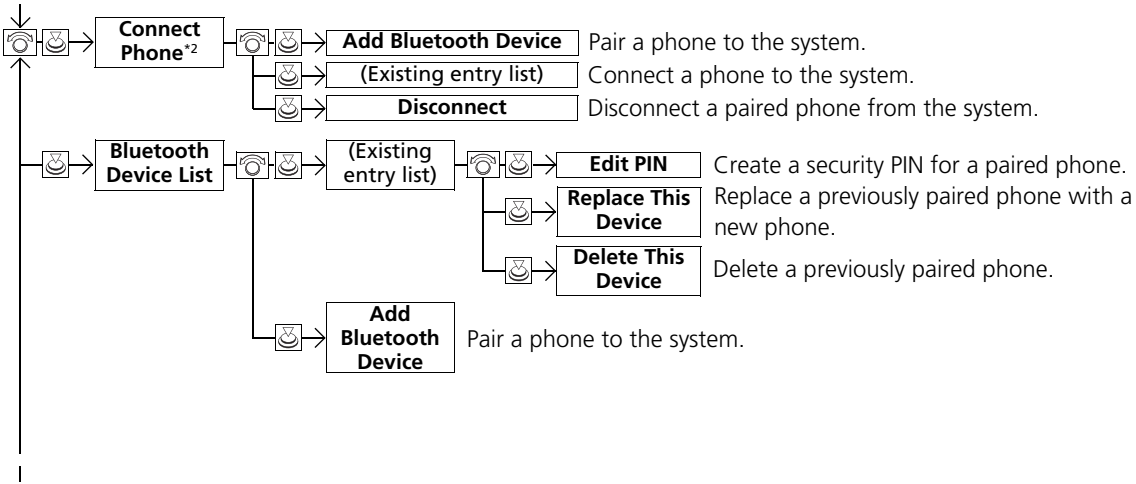
➔ **Customized Features** P. 298

HFL Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II*1 to use HFL.

■ Phone Settings screen

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .



*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

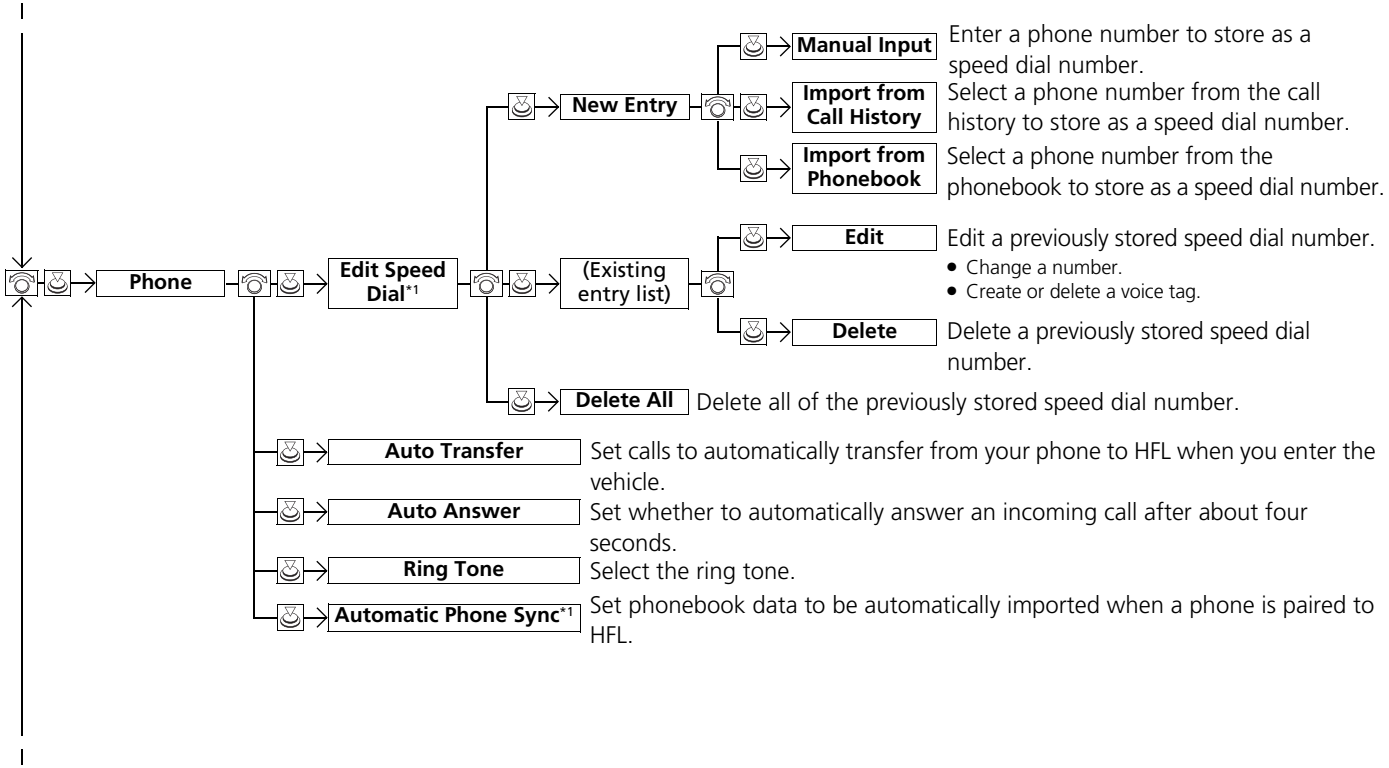
*2: Appears when a phone has already been paired to HFL.

HFL Menus

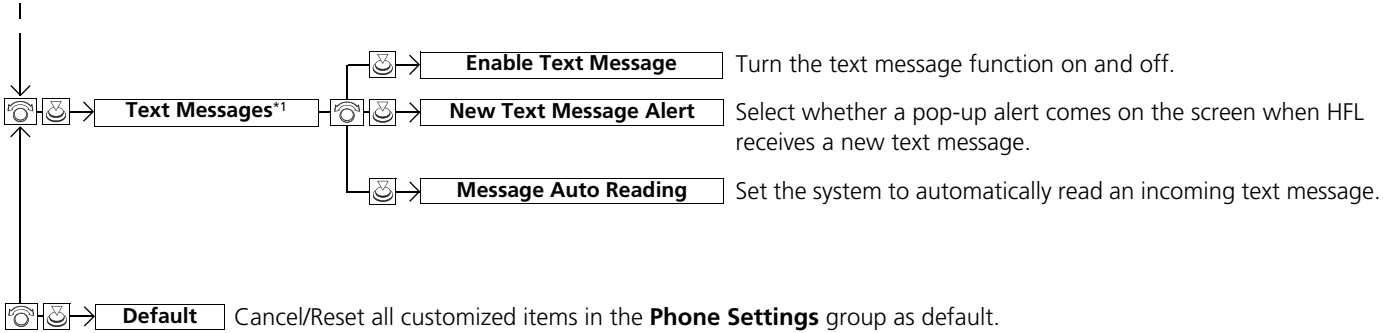
To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.

Continued



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

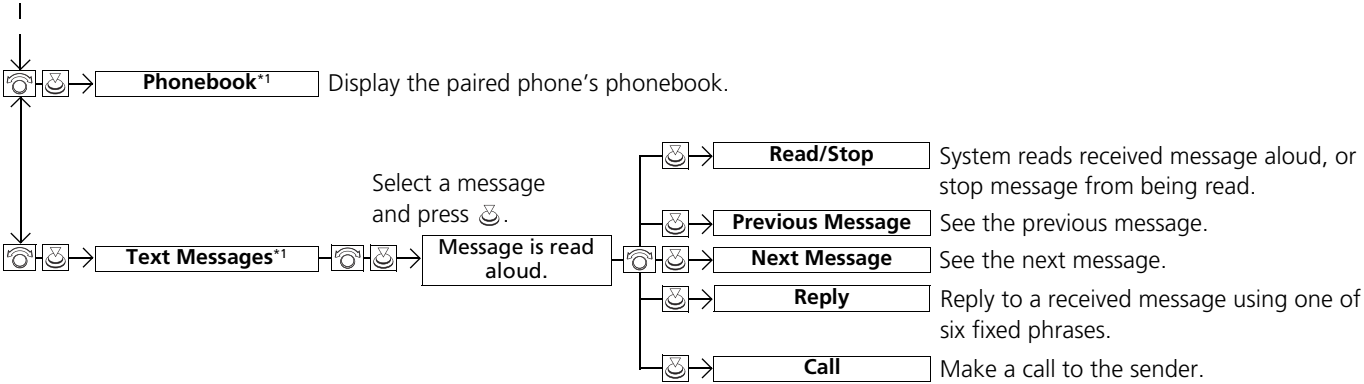
Continued

■ Phone menu screen

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button to display the menu items.

- **Dial***1 — Enter a phone number to dial.
- **Redial***1 — Redial the last number dialed in the phone's history.
- **Call History***1
  - **All** — Display the last 20 outgoing, incoming and missed calls.
  - **Dialed** — Display the last 20 outgoing calls.
  - **Received** — Display the last 20 incoming calls.
  - **Missed** — Display the last 20 missed calls.
- **Speed Dial***1
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input** — Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History** — Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook** — Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
  - **(Existing entry list)** — Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.
  - **More Speed Dials** — Display another paired phone's speed dial list.

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

Continued

Phone Setup

■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
   ▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
   ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
   ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
5. HFL gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by phone.
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

Phone Setup

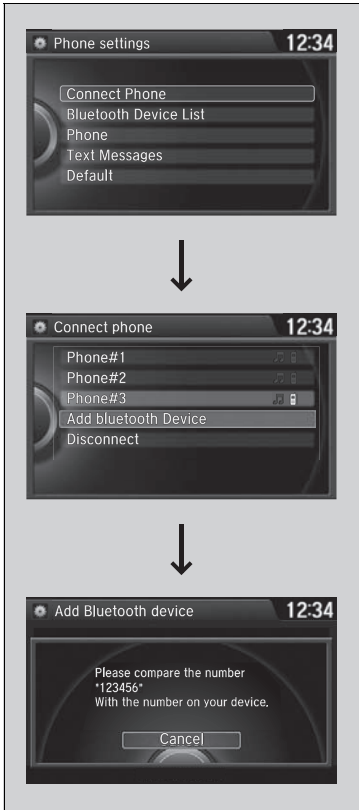
Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone can be used with HFL.
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

When pairing is completed, an **Automatic Phone Sync** prompt appears. Select **On** if you want your call history and phonebook automatically imported to HFL.

➡ **Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting** P. 360



■ **To pair a cell phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Connect Phone**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Add Bluetooth Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
   ▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
   ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
   ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
5. HFL gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by phone.
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

Continued

■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth**, then **Edit Pairing Code**.
3. Rotate to select **Fixed** or **Random**, then press .

To change the pairing code setting

The pairing code may be six or four digits depending on your phone.

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

■ To replace an already-paired phone with a new phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Device List**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a paired phone you want to replace, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Replace This Device**, then press .
5. HFL enters the pairing process and searches a new phone.
   ▶ Follow the prompts to pair a new phone.
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

To replace an already-paired phone with a new phone

The replaced phone will keep the same speed dial entries, call history, and security PIN information from the previously paired phone.

Continued

■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Device List**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete This Device**, then press .
5. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if it is successful.

To Set Up Text Message Options

To turn on or off the text message function

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Text Messages**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Enable Text Message**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .

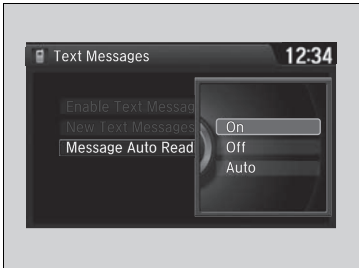
Continued

■ To turn on or off the text message notice

1. On the **Text Messages** screen, rotate to select **New Text Message Alert**, then press .
2. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .

To turn on or off the text message notice

On: A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.
Off: The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.



■ To set up the auto reading option

1. On the **Text Messages** screen, rotate to select **Message Auto Reading**, then press .
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
2. Rotate to select **On**, **Off** or **Auto** then press .

To set up the auto reading option

On: A text message is always read aloud.
Off: A text message is not read aloud.
Auto: A text message is read aloud only when driving.

To Create a Security PIN

You can protect each of the six cell phones with a security PIN.

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   Phone Settings screen P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Device List**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a phone you want to add a security PIN to, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Edit PIN**, then press .
5. Enter a new four-digit number.
   ▶ Rotate to select, then press . Press to delete. Press **OK** to enter the security PIN.
6. Re-enter the four-digit number.
   ▶ The screen returns to the screen in step 4.

To Create a Security PIN

If the phone is already security PIN protected, you need to enter the current security PIN before clearing the PIN or creating a new one.

Continued

Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Auto Transfer**.
3. Rotate to select **On**, then press .

Auto Answer

You can set HFL to automatically answer an incoming call in four seconds.

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Auto Answer**.
3. Rotate to select **On**, then press .

Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

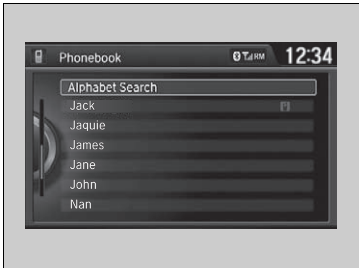
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   Phone Settings screen P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Ring Tone**.
3. Rotate to select **Fixed**, **Mobile Phone** or **Off**, then press .

Ring Tone

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speaker.
Mobile Phone: The ring tone stored in the connected cell phone sounds from the speaker.
Off: No ring tones sound from the speaker.

Continued

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

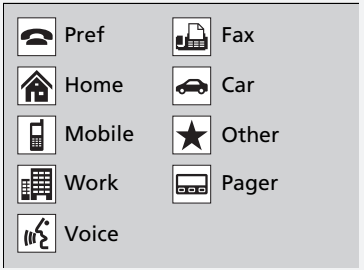
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.

Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   Phone Settings screen P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

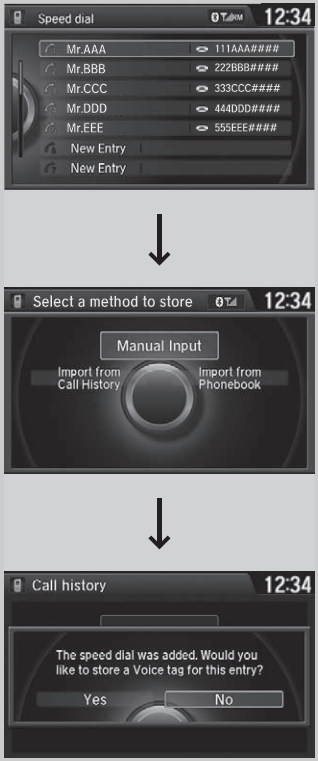


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



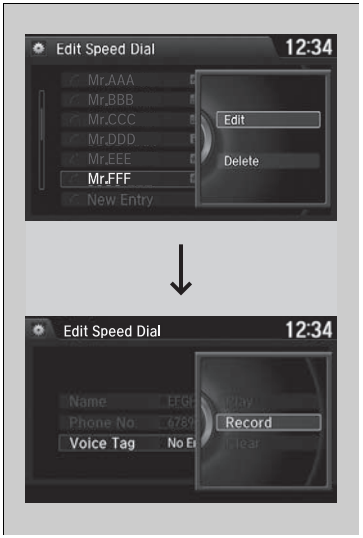
To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 348
2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **New Entry**.
3. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .
   From **Import from Call History**:
   ▶ Select a number from the call history.
   From **Manual Input**:
   ▶ Input the number manually.
   From **Import from Phonebook**:
   ▶ Select a number from the linked cell phone's imported phonebook.
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored from **Import from Call History** or **Import from Phonebook**, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Rotate to select **Yes** or **No**, then press .
5. Using the button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag. Say *"Call"* and the voice tag name.

Continued



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

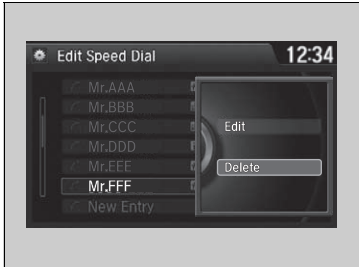
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Edit**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Voice Tag**, then press .
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Record**, then press .
5. Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.
It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."

■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Edit**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Voice Tag**, then press .
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Clear**, then press .
5. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .



■ To delete a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 345
2. Rotate to select **Phone**, then press .
   ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
4. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

Continued

Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name, or number can be dialed by voice from most screens. Press the button and say *"Call"* and the phonebook name, phone number, or stored voice tag.

The maximum range between your phone and vehicles is 30 feet (10 meters).

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 348
2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a name, then press .
   ▶ You can also search by letter. Rotate to select **Alphabet Search**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number, phonebook name, or number using voice commands.

➡ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 344
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 361

Continued

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 348
2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
4. Rotate to select , then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using redial

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 348
2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number, phonebook name, or number using voice commands.

➡ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 344
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 361

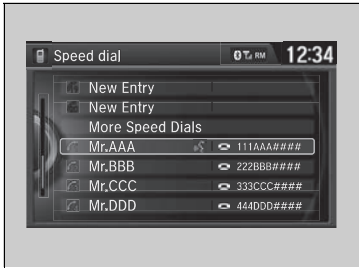
■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 348
2. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the call history

The call history displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.
(Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.)



■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 348
2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a speed dial entry

Select **More Speed Dials** to view another paired phone's speed dial list. You can make a call from that list using the currently connected phone.

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 361

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name, or number can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the button and follow the prompts.

To call stored speed dial entries 1-6, press the corresponding preset buttons from the **Phone** screen.

Continued

Receiving a Call

When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.
Press the button to decline or end the call.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the button again to return to the current call.

Ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Transfer: Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.
Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

Press the **MENU** button to display the options. Rotate to select the mute option, then press .

▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

Continued

Receiving a Text Message

HFL can display newly received text messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.

1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message.
2. Rotate to select **Read** to listen to the message, then press .
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, press .

Receiving a Text Message

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

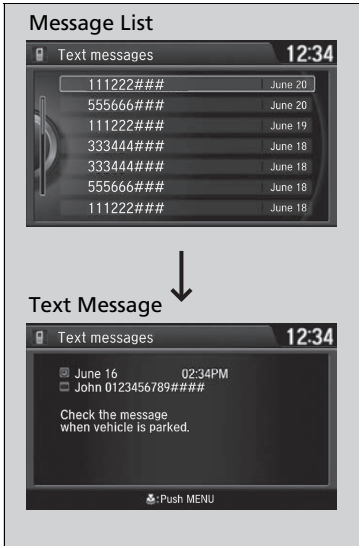
With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text messages.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text message feature. Only use the text message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

When you receive a text message for the first time after the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Text Message Alert** setting to **On**.

➡ **To turn on or off the text message notice** P. 356

Displaying Text Messages



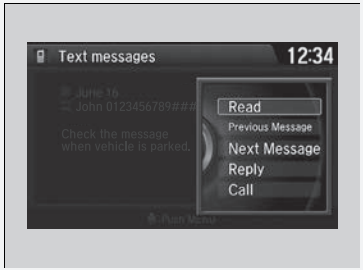
1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Text Messages**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a message, then press .
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

Displaying Text Messages

The icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, press on the text message screen. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Previous Message** or **Next Message**, then press .



Continued

■ Using the Stop or Read option

1. Go to the text message screen.
   ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
   ➔ **Displaying Text Messages** P. 371
2. Press to have the pop-up menu appear on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **Stop** or **Read**, then press .

Using the Stop or Read option

This option changes to:
- **Stop** while the text message is read out. Select this option to discontinue the message read out.
- **Read** when the system has finished reading out the text message, or after you selected **Stop**.
  Select this option to hear the system read out the selected message.

■ Reply to a message

1. Go to the text message screen.
   ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
   ➔ **Displaying Text Messages** P. 371
2. Press to have the pop-up menu appear on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **Reply**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the reply message, then press .
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Send** to send the message.
   ▶ **Complete** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:
- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

■ Making a call to a sender

1. Go to the text message screen.
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
➡ **Displaying Text Messages** P. 371

2. Press to have the pop-up menu appear on the screen.

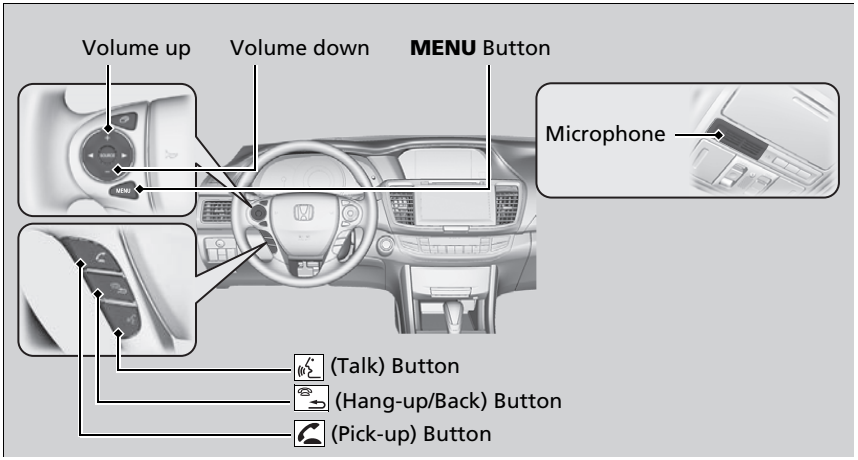
3. Rotate to select **Call**, then press .

Models with two displays

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

HFL Buttons



Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, HFL is unavailable.

➡ **How to customize** P. 316

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphones pick up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

Up to five speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

➡ **Speed Dial** P. 389

Up to five call histories can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen, or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up/back) button: Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

MENU button: Press to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Redial** on the phone screen.

To go to the **Phone menu** screen:

1. Select HOME.

2. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the phone screen.

3. Select MENU.

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

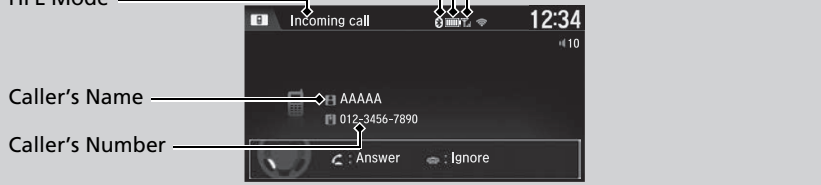
Place your phone where you can get good reception.

Continued

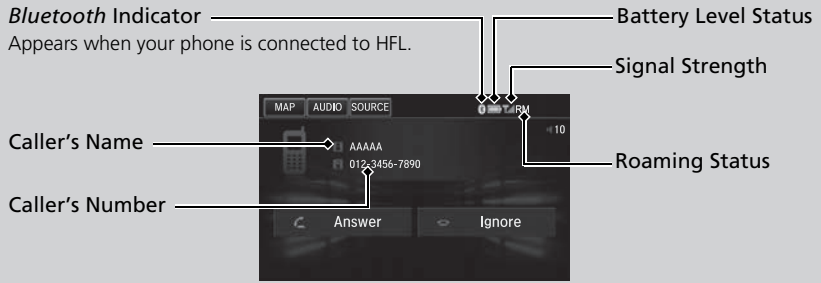
HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen and audio/information touch screen notify you when there is an incoming call.

Audio/information screen



Audio/information touch screen



HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen and audio/information touch screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.
➡ **How to customize** P. 316

Features

Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

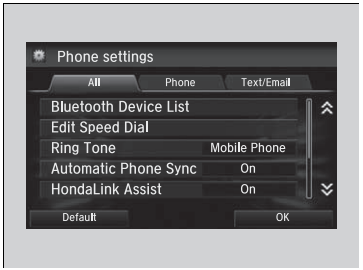
Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➡ **Speed Dial** P. 389

HFL Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II*1 to use the system.

■ Phone settings screen

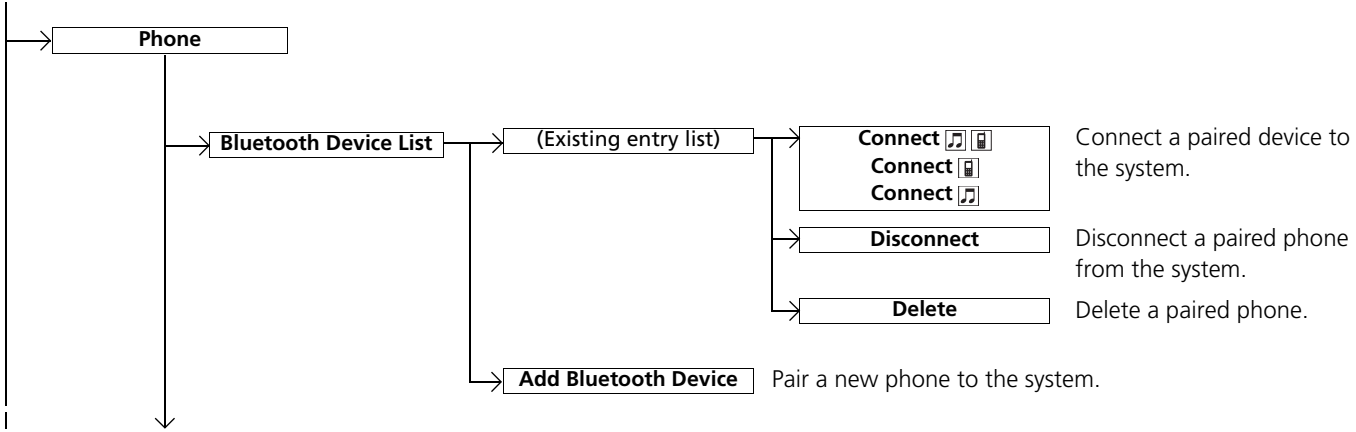


1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

HFL Menus

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.



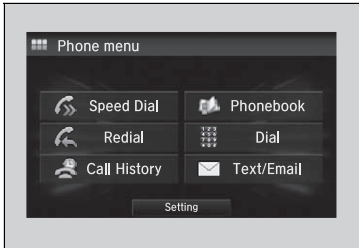
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

- **Edit Speed Dial**
  - (Existing entry list)
    - **Edit** — Edit a previously stored speed dial number.
      - Change a name.
      - Change a number.
      - Create or delete a voice tag.
    - **Delete** — Delete a previously stored speed dial number.
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input** — Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History** — Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook** — Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
  - **Delete All** — Delete all of the previously stored speed dial number.
- **Ring Tone** — Select the ring tone.
- **Automatic Phone Sync** — Set phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.
- **HondaLink Assist** — Turn HondaLink Assist on and off.

Continued

- **Text/Email**
  - **Enable Text/Email** — Turn the text/e-mail message function on and off.
  - **Select Account** — Select a mail or text message account.
  - **New Message Notification** — Select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.
- **Default** — Cancel/Reset all customized items in the **Phone** settings group as default.

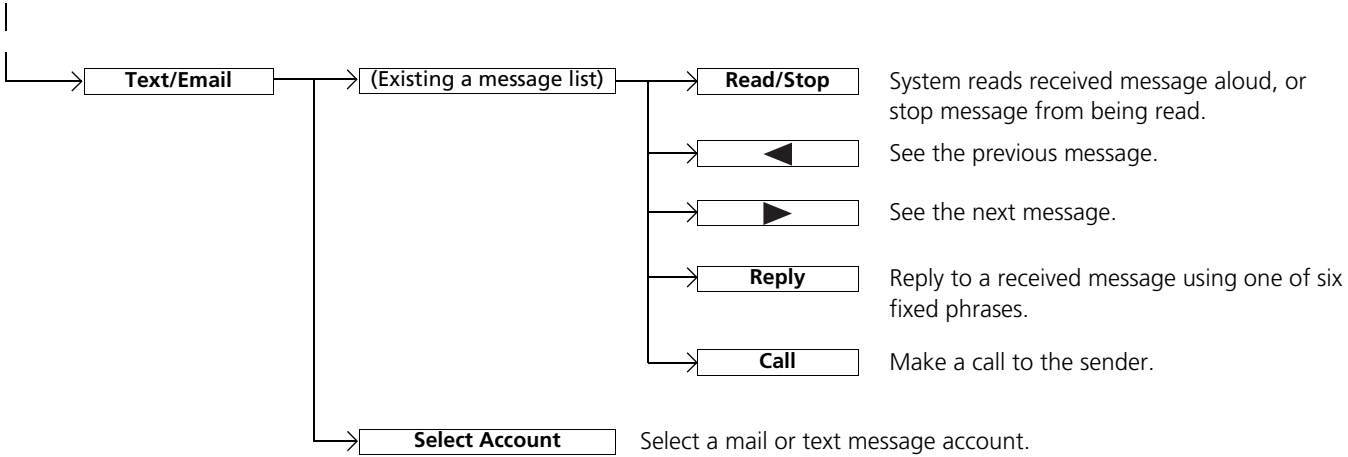
■ Phone menu screen



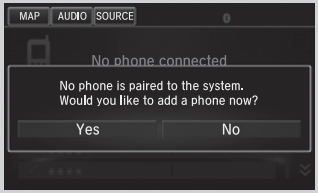
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select MENU.

- **Speed Dial**
  - **(Existing entry list)** — Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input** — Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History** — Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook** — Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
- **Phonebook** — Display the paired phone's phonebook.
- **Redial** — Redial the last number dialed.
- **Dial** — Enter a phone number to dial.
- **Call History**
  - **All** — Display the last outgoing, incoming and missed calls.
  - **Dialed** — Display the last outgoing calls.
  - **Received** — Display the last incoming calls.
  - **Missed** — Display the last missed calls.

Continued


Text/Email
(Existing a message list)
Read/Stop
System reads received message aloud, or stop message from being read.
◀
See the previous message.
▶
See the next message.
Reply
Reply to a received message using one of six fixed phrases.
Call
Make a call to the sender.
Select Account
Select a mail or text message account.

Phone Setup



To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
   ▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
   ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
   ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, search for **HandsFreeLink**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information touch screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by phone.

Continued

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable and **Add Bluetooth Device** is grayed out from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

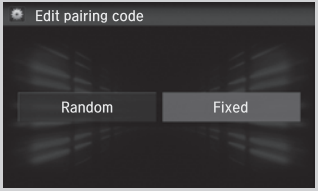
■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 378
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
   ▶ HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select **Connect** ♫ 📱, **Connect** 📱, or **Connect** ♫.

To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFL will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth device list** screen.



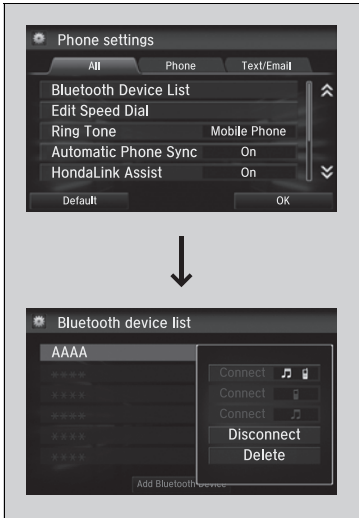
■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth/Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
5. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
6. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.

To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.

➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 378

2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.

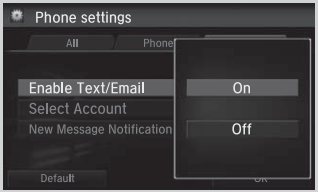
3. Select a phone you want to delete.

4. Select **Delete**.

5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

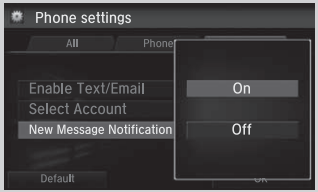
Continued

To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options



To turn on or off the text/e-mail function

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
   Phone settings screen P. 378
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Enable Text/Email**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.



To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
   Phone settings screen P. 378
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **New Message Notification**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options

To use the text message/e-mail function, it may be necessary to set up on your phone.

To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice

On: A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.
Off: The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 378
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

Ring Tone

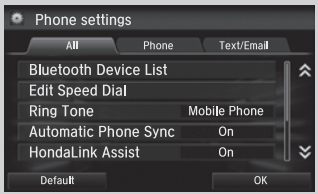
Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.
Mobile Phone: The ring tone stored in the connected cell phone sounds from the speakers.

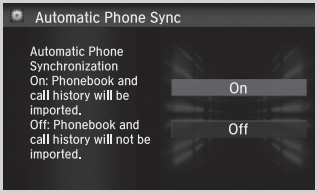
Continued

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.



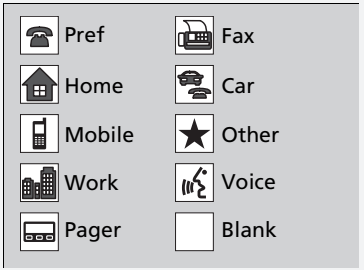


Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 378
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

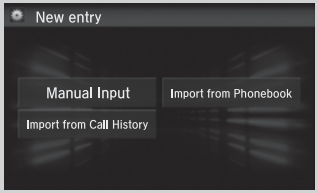


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 381
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select **New Entry**.
   From **Import from Call History**:
   ▶ Select a number from the call history.
   From **Manual Input**:
   ▶ Input the number manually.
   From **Import from Phonebook**:
   ▶ Select a number from the connected cell phone's imported phonebook.
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
5. Select **Record** to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.
   ▶ Using the button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.

Continued

■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

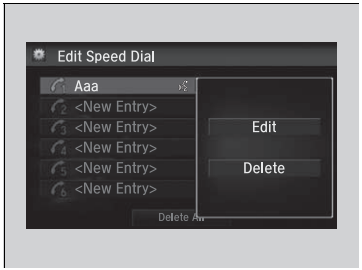
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 378
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 378
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognize a longer name.
For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."



■ To edit a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 378

2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.

3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.

4. Select a setting you want.

■ To delete a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 378

2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.

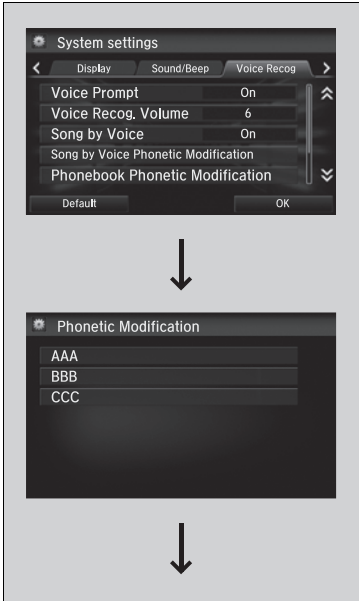
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.

4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Continued

■ Phonebook Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications or a new voice tag to the phone's contact name so that it is easier for HFL to recognize voice commands.

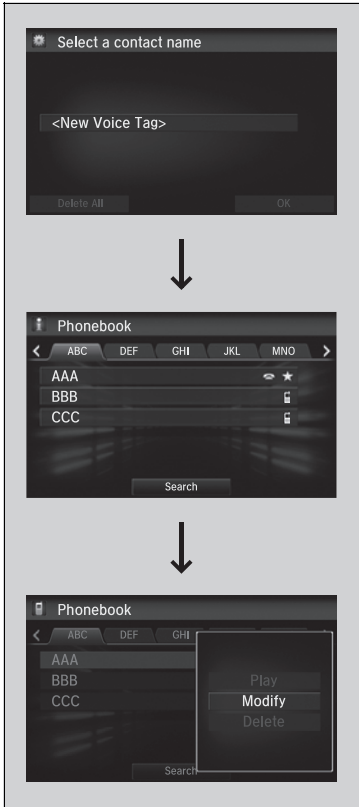


■ To add a new voice tag

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to.

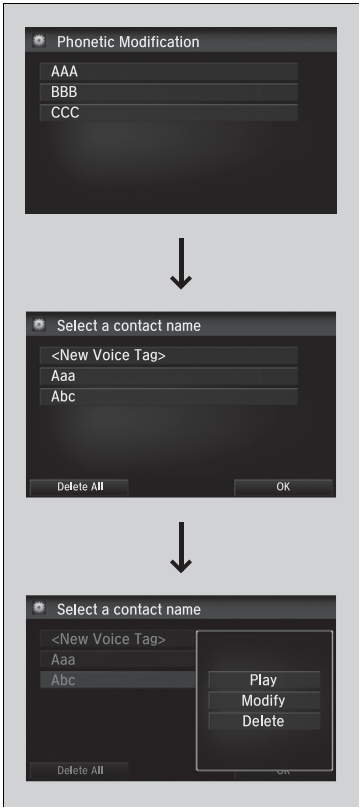
Phonebook Phonetic Modification

You can store up to 20 phonetic modification items.



7. Select **New Voice Tag**.
8. Select a contact name you want to add to.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
9. Select **Modify**.
10. Using **Record** or the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
11. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.

Continued



■ To modify a voice tag

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to modify phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to modify.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Modify**.
9. Using **Record** or the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
10. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.

Phonebook Phonetic Modification

You can only modify or delete contact names for the currently connected phone.

■ To delete a modified voice tag

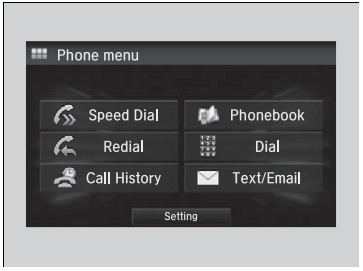
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to delete.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Delete**.
   ▶ The selected contact name has been selected.
9. Select **OK**.

Continued

■ To delete all modified voice tags

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
   ▶ The contact name list appears.
7. Select **Delete All**.
8. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **Yes**.

■ Making a Call



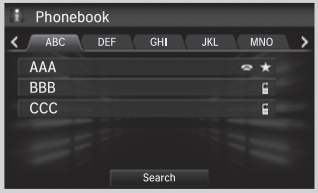
You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

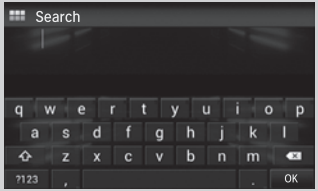
Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.
Press the button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, phone calls cannot be made with *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® and are only made from Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.





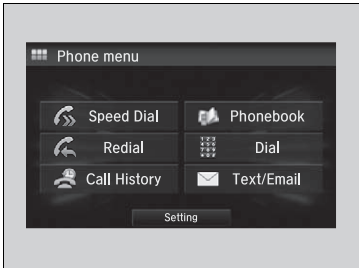
■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 381
2. Select **Phonebook**.
3. Select a name.
   ▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
   ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.
4. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 381
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Dial**.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Continued

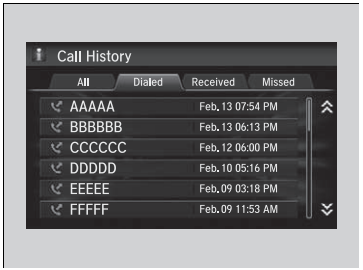


■ To make a call using redial

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 381
2. Select **Redial**.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed.



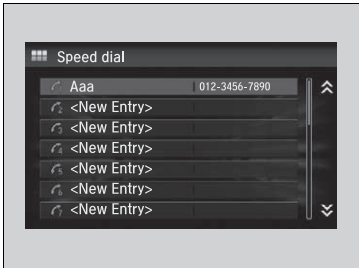
■ To make a call using the Call History

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 381
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.
4. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.
(Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)



■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

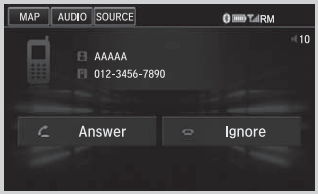
1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 381
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 389

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the incoming call screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.
Press the button to decline or end the call.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

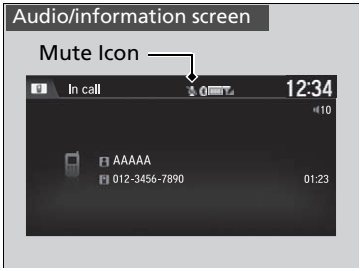
You can select the icons on the audio/information touch screen instead of the and buttons.

Continued

■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Transfer: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.
Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

Audio/information screen



Audio/information touch screen

The available options are shown on the lower half of the audio/information touch screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information touch screen.

Receiving a Text Message/E-mail

HFL can display newly received text or e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.

1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message or e-mail.
2. Select **Read** to listen to the message.
   ▶ The text message or e-mail is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, select **Stop**.

Receiving a Text Message/E-mail

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

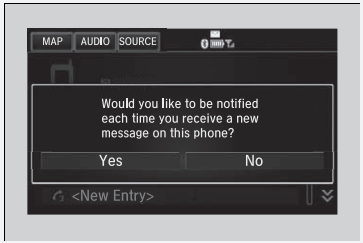
The system can only receive massages that are sent a text (SMS) messages. The message sent using the data services will not be displayed in the list.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text messages and e-mails.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text message/e-mail feature. Only use the text message/e-mail feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

When you receive a text message or e-mail for the first time since the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Message Notification** setting to **On**.

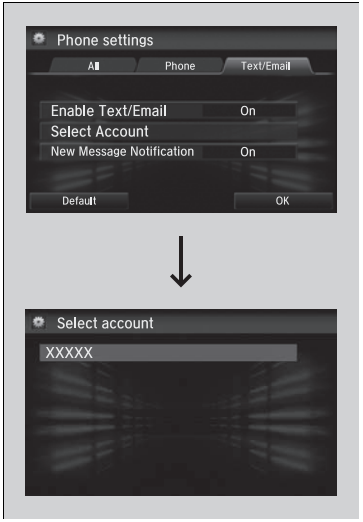
➡ **To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice** P. 386



Continued

Selecting a Mail Account

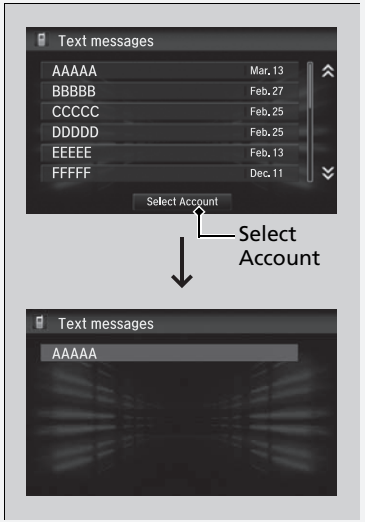
If a paired phone has text message or mail accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.



1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 378
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Select Account**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Text Message** or an e-mail account you want.

Selecting a Mail Account

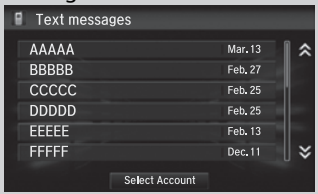
You can also select a mail account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.



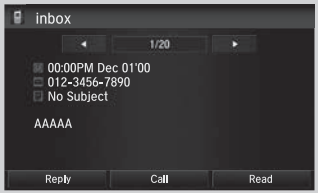
You can only receive notifications from one text message or mail account at a time.

Displaying Messages

Message List



Text Message



Displaying text messages

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 381
2. Select **Text/Email**.
   ▶ Select account if necessary.
3. Select a message.
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

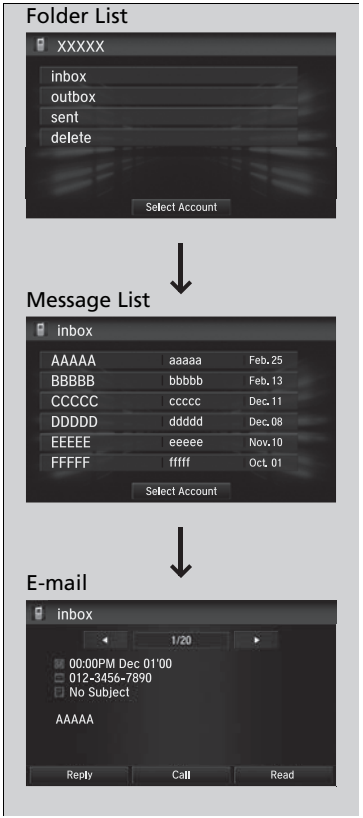
Displaying Messages

The ✉ icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, select ◀ or ▶ on the message screen.

Continued



■ Displaying e-mails

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.

➡ **Phone menu screen** P. 381

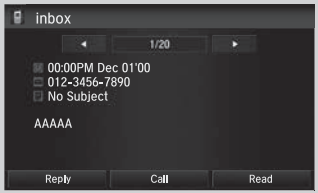
2. Select **Text/Email**.

▶ Select **Select Account** if necessary.

3. Select a folder.

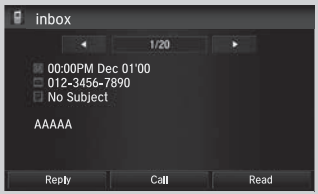
4. Select a message.

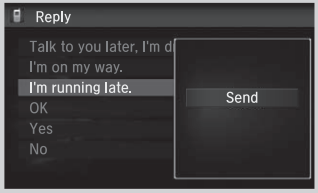
▶ The e-mail is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.



■ Read or Stop reading a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
   ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
   ➡ **Displaying Messages** P. 403
2. Select **Stop** to stop reading.
   Select **Read** again to start reading the message from the beginning.





■ Reply to a message

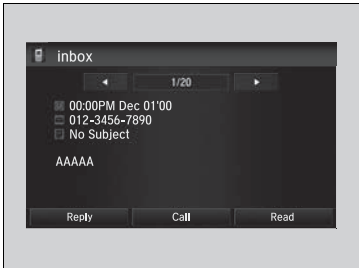
1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
   ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
   ➡ **Displaying Messages** P. 403
2. Select **Reply**.
3. Select the reply message.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Send** to send the message.
   ▶ **Complete** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:
- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

Continued

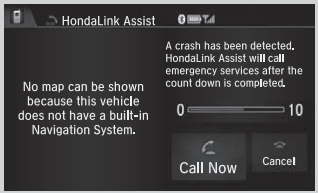


■ Making a call to a sender

1. Go to the text message screen.
2. Select **Call**.

In Case of Emergency

Automatic collision notification



If your vehicle's airbags deploy or if the unit detects that the vehicle is severely impacted, your vehicle automatically will attempt to connect to the HondaLink operator. If connected, information about your vehicle, its location, and its condition will be sent to the operator; you also can speak to the operator when connected.

IMPORTANT: For vehicles equipped with HondaLink Assist, owner activation constitutes authorization for Honda to collect information from your vehicle needed to provide the service, and agreement to the Terms of Use at *www.hondalink.com/TermsAndConditions*. In a crash, HondaLink Assist will attempt to notify emergency services but NEITHER Honda-PRO NOR ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS GUARANTEE THAT SUCH NOTIFICATION WILL OCCUR.

Honda reserves the right to terminate HondaLink Assist services at any time or for any reason, and in the future may not be able to provide services due to changes in, or obsolescence of, technology integral to the service or changes in governmental regulation.

Continued

In Case of Emergency

Your vehicle may not be able to connect to the operator if the battery level is low, the line is disconnected, or you do not have adequate cellular coverage.

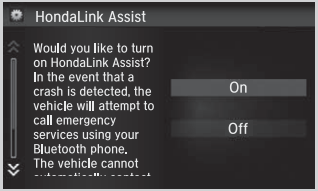
You cannot use this emergency services when:
- You travel outside the HondaLink service coverage areas.
- There is a problem with the connecting devices, such as the microphones, speakers, or the unit itself.

You cannot operate other phone-related functions using the screen while talking to the operator. Select **Hang Up** to terminate the connection to your vehicle.

Automatic collision notification

If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it repeatedly tries until it succeeds.

■ To enable notification



1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 378
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **HondaLink Assist**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

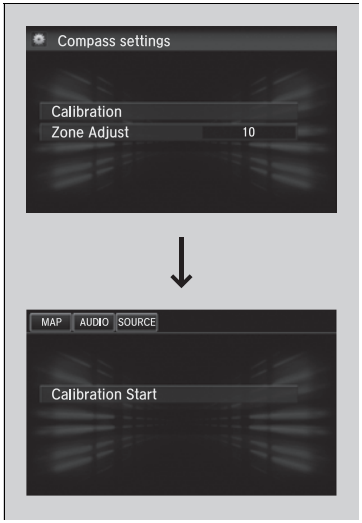
To enable notification

Setting options:
- **On:** Notification is available.
- **Off:** Disable the feature.

When you turn the ignition switch to ON [II]*1, the compass self-calibrates, and the compass display appears.

Compass Calibration

If the compass indicates the wrong direction, or the **CAL** indicator blinks, you need to manually calibrate the system.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON [II]*1.
2. On the top screen of any audio source, press and hold [MENU] for five seconds.
   ▶ The display switches to the **Compass settings** screen.
3. Select **Calibration**.
4. Select **Calibration Start**.
5. Drive the vehicle slowly in two circles.
   ▶ The compass starts to show a direction after the calibration. The **CAL** indicator goes off.

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Compass*

Compass operation can be affected under the following conditions:
- Driving near power lines or stations
- Crossing a bridge
- Passing a large vehicle, or driving near a large object that can cause a magnetic disturbance
- When accessories such as antennas and roof racks are mounted by magnets

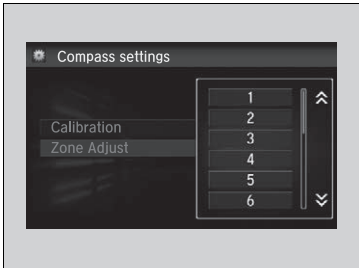
Compass Calibration

Calibrate the compass in an open area.

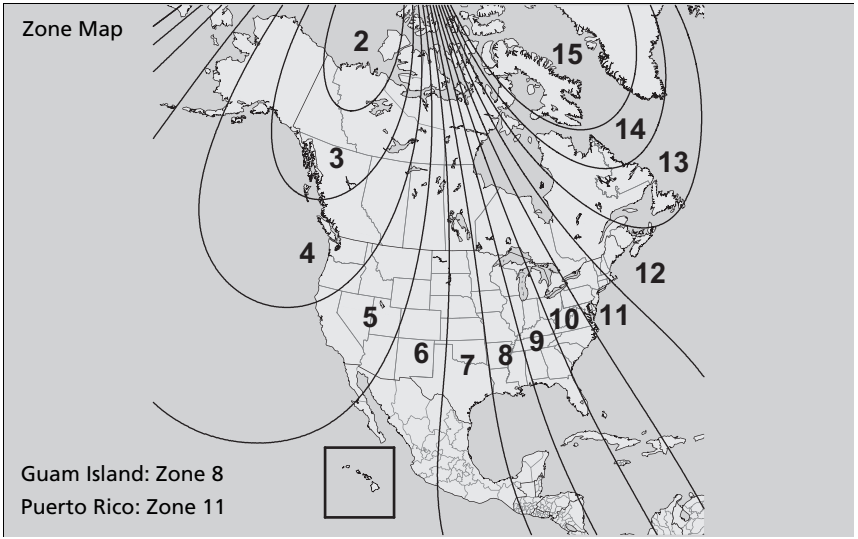
While setting the compass, select [BACK] to cancel the setting mode and return to the previous screen.

* Not available on all models

Compass Zone Selection



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1.
2. On the top screen of any audio source, press and hold MENU for five seconds.
   ▶ The display switches to the **Compass settings** screen.
3. Select **Zone Adjust**.
   ▶ The display shows the current zone number the system is set to.
4. Select the zone number of your area (See Zone Map).



*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Compass Zone Selection

The zone selection is done to compensate the variation between magnetic north and true north.

If the calibration starts while the audio system is in use, the display returns to normal after the calibration is completed.

Driving

This chapter discusses driving, refueling, and information on items such as accessories.

Before Driving
Driving Preparation 412
Maximum Load Limit..... 415
Towing a Trailer
Towing Preparation..... 417
Driving Safely with a Trailer..... 419
Towing Your Vehicle..... 420
When Driving
Starting the Engine 421, 423
Precautions While Driving..... 428
Automatic Transmission/CVT*..... 429
Shifting..... 430, 432, 436, 438
ECON Button 441
Cruise Control 442
Front Sensor Camera* 445
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*..... 447
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System* 460
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*.... 464
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System..... 471
LaneWatch™*..... 473
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)... 475
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation 477
Braking
Brake System 479
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)..... 481
Brake Assist System 482
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)* 483
Parking Your Vehicle
When Stopped 491
Parking Sensor System* 492
Multi-View Rear Camera..... 496
Refueling
Fuel Information 497
How to Refuel 498
Fuel Economy
Improving Fuel Economy..... 499
Accessories and Modifications 500

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressure, check for damage and excessive wear.
    ➔ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 539
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the hood, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal.
Also check under the hood for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
  ➔ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 415
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock all doors and the trunk.
  ➔ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 124
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➔ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 160
  ➔ **Adjusting the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraint Positions** P. 163
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➔ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 158
  ➔ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 157

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

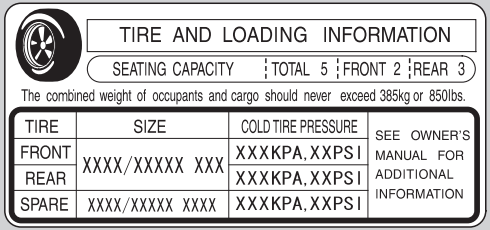
Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➔ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 35
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➔ **Indicators** P. 68

Maximum Load Limit

The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg). See the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Label Example



This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

Continued

Maximum Load Limit

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load.

➔ **Specifications** P. 584, 586

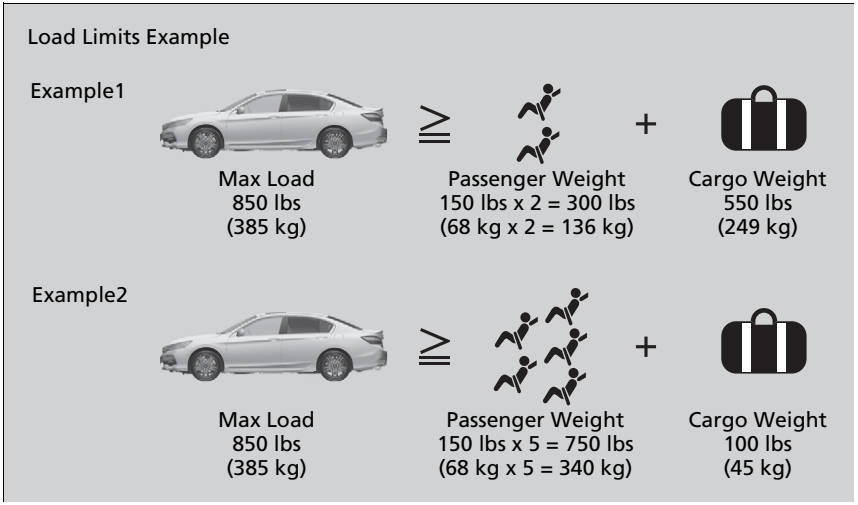
Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.

➔ **Specifications** P. 584, 586

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

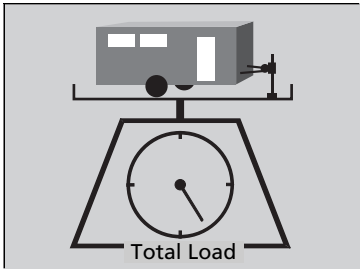
In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.



Towing Preparation

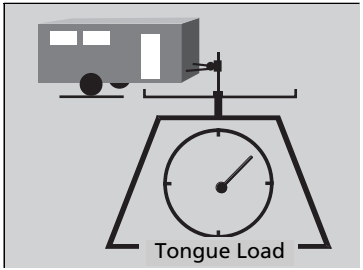
Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



Total trailer weight

Maximum allowable weight of the trailer, cargo, and everything in or on it must not exceed 1,000 lbs (450 kg). Towing loads in excess of this can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.



Tongue load

The weight of the tongue with a fully loaded trailer on the hitch should be approximately 10% of the total trailer weight.

- Excessive tongue load reduces front tire traction and steering control. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper tongue load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

Towing Load Limits

WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your cargo load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the tongue load.

Break-in Period
Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 600 miles (1,000 km).

Never exceed the gross weight ratings.
Gross weight information
Vehicle Specifications P. 584, 586

Continued

Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

Hitches

The hitch must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer brakes

There are two common types of trailer brakes: surge and electric. Surge brakes are common for boat trailers, since the brakes will get wet. If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system, as it will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

Additional towing equipment

Many states and provinces/territories require special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  ➡ **Towing Load Limits** P. 417
- Securely attach the hitch, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressures of the trailer tires, including the spare.

Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.

Automatic transmission/CVT models

- Use the D position when towing a trailer on level roads.

Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

Continued

Driving Safely with a Trailer

Parking
In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tires.

Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Monitor your temperature gauge. If it nears the red (Hot) mark, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

Automatic transmission models

- Shift to the S position if the transmission shifts frequently.

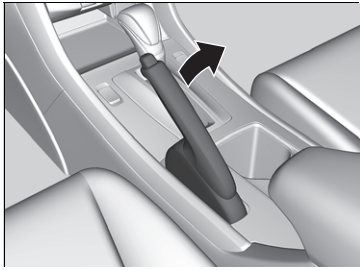
Towing Your Vehicle

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

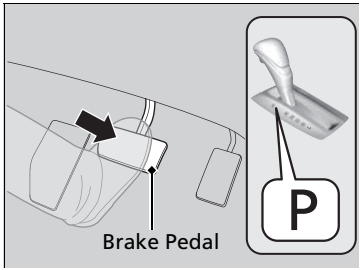
➔ **Emergency Towing** P. 582

Models without smart entry system

Starting the Engine



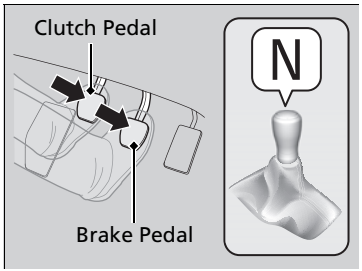
1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



Continuously variable transmission (CVT) models

2. Check that the shift lever is in P, then depress the brake pedal.

▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.



Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in N. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.

▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

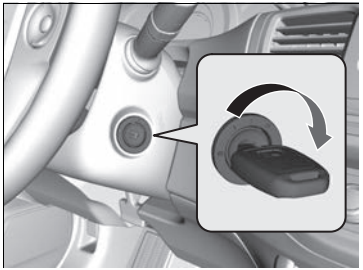
The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. If temperatures consistently below -22°F (-30°C) are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration to prevent freezing. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Continued



3. Turn the ignition switch to START III without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Starting to Drive

Continuously variable transmission (CVT) models

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake indicator has gone off.
➡ **Parking Brake** P. 479

2. Put the shift lever in D. Select R when reversing.

3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Continuously variable transmission (CVT) models

Move the shift lever to D, S, or L* when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting the Engine

Do not hold the key in START III for more than 10 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.
➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 132

Hill start assist system

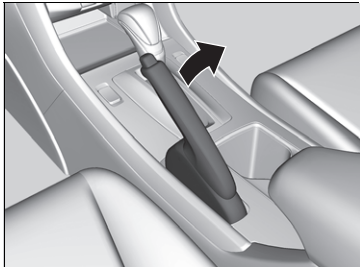
Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

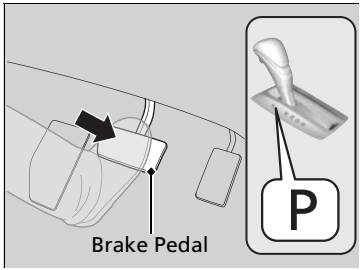
* Not available on all models

Models with smart entry system

Starting the Engine



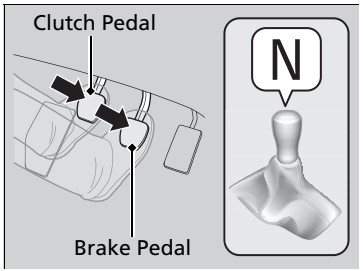
1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



Automatic transmission/CVT models

2. Check that the shift lever is in P, then depress the brake pedal.

▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.



Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in N. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.

▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

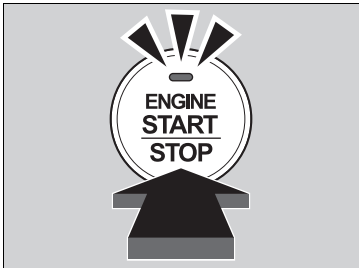
If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. If temperatures consistently below -22°F (-30°C) are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration to prevent freezing. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.
If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 132

Continued



All models

3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

Automatic transmission/CVT models

1. Shift to P.

2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Manual transmission models

- If the shift lever is in N, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- If the shift lever is in any gear other than N, depress the clutch pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Starting the Engine

Bring the smart entry remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the smart entry remote is weak.

If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak P. 566

The engine may not start if the smart entry remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely start the engine using the smart entry remote.

To start the engine

With the doors locked, press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [HOLD] button.

The engine runs for up to 10 minutes without you starting the vehicle.
To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [HOLD] button.

▶ The turn signal lights come back on three times, twice, if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

Remote Engine Start*

⚠WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. While the vehicle is moving, the range may be reduced.
This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:
- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the multi-information display* or audio/information touch screen*.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The shift lever is in a position other than [P].
- The hood is open, or any door or the trunk is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered smart entry remote is in the vehicle.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To stop the engine

Press and hold the HOLD button for one second.

Remote Engine Start*

- There is any antenna failure.
- Door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.

The engine may stop while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the HOLD button on the smart entry remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the smart entry remote.
- Door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The hood is open.
- The shift lever is in a position other than P.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.
When it is warm outside:

- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The defroster is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear defogger and door mirror heaters* are activated.

* Not available on all models

Automatic transmission/CVT models

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button* on the smart entry remote

1. While depressing the brake pedal, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

When the engine was started in any case

2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake indicator has gone off.
   Parking Brake P. 479
3. Put the shift lever in D. Select R when reversing.
4. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Continuously variable transmission (CVT) models

Move the shift lever to D, S, or L when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Automatic transmission models

Move the shift lever to D or S when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button* on the smart entry remote

The engine stops when the shift lever is moved out of P before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow the step 1 when starting to drive.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

* Not available on all models

Precautions While Driving

In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY I*1 while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in N, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as to not damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel on the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

Automatic Transmission/CVT*

Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower gear, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

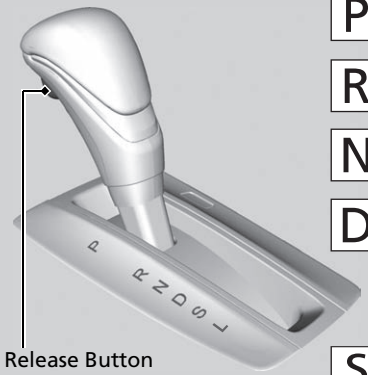
* Not available on all models

Continuously variable transmission (CVT) models without paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing

N **Neutral**
Used when idling

D **Drive**
Used for normal driving

S **Drive (S)**
Used:
- For better acceleration
- To increase engine braking
- When going up or down hills

L **Low**
- Used to further increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Shifting

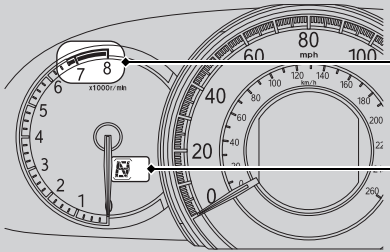
You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 and remove the key unless the shift lever is in P.

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

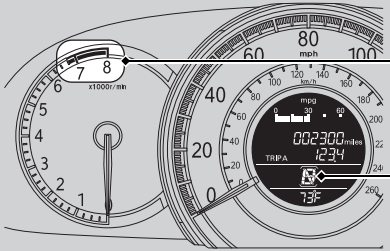
When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-22°F/-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

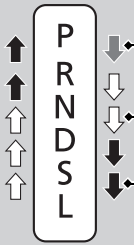
Shift Lever Operation

Models with multi-information display



Models with information display





Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

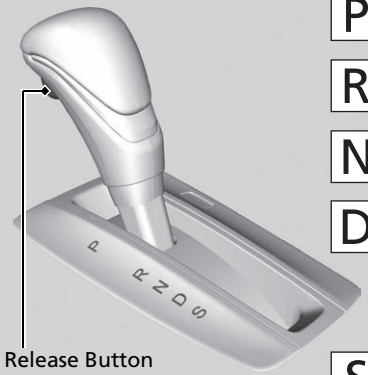
It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

Continuously variable transmission (CVT) models with paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing

N **Neutral**
Used when idling

D **Drive**
Used:
- For normal driving
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

S **Drive (S)**
Used:
- For better acceleration
- To increase engine braking
- When going up or down hills
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Shifting

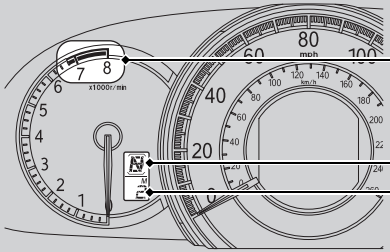
You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 and remove the key unless the shift lever is in P.

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

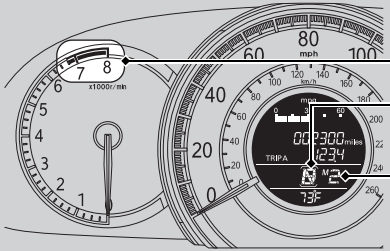
When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-22°F/-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

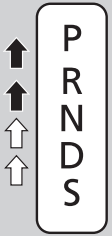
Shift Lever Operation

Models with multi-information display



Models with information display





Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Continued

Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without removing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the shift lever is in D:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is canceled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.
You can cancel this mode by pulling the + paddle shifter for a few seconds.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the shift lever is in S:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When canceling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from S to D. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is canceled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator go off.

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

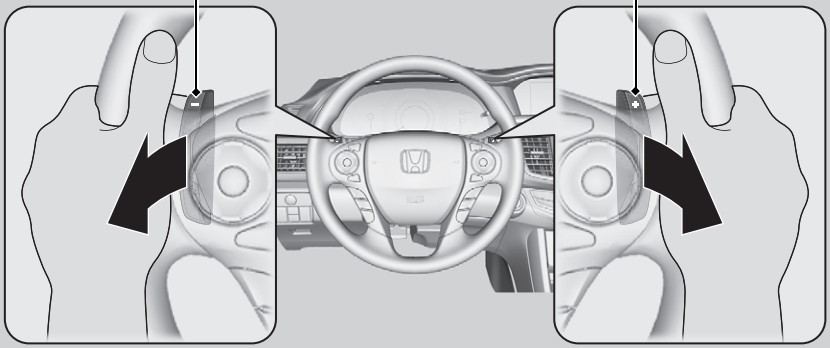
To improve fuel economy, the transmission may shift up to a higher speed than the seventh under certain circumstances. In this case, the number in the shift indicator remains as **7**.

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:
Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.
When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tires to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is canceled and goes back to the normal D driving mode.

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



Downshifting when pulling the − paddle shifter (Changes to lower speed number)

Upshifting when pulling the + paddle shifter (Changes to higher speed number)

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.
To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

Recommended Shift Points
Use this table as a guideline for efficient fuel economy and effective emission control.

Shift Up	Normal Acceleration
1 to 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 to 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 to 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 to 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 to 6	50 mph (80 km/h)
6 to 7	55 mph (89 km/h)

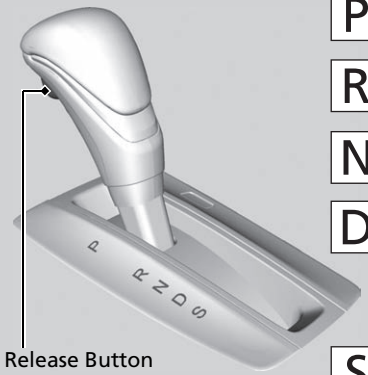
The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.
Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

Automatic transmission models

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing

N **Neutral**
Used when idling

D **Drive**
Used for normal driving (gears change between 1st and 6th automatically)

S **Drive (S)**
- Automatically changing gears between 1st and 5th (5th gear is used only at high speed)
- Used when towing a trailer in hilly terrain
- Used to increase engine braking

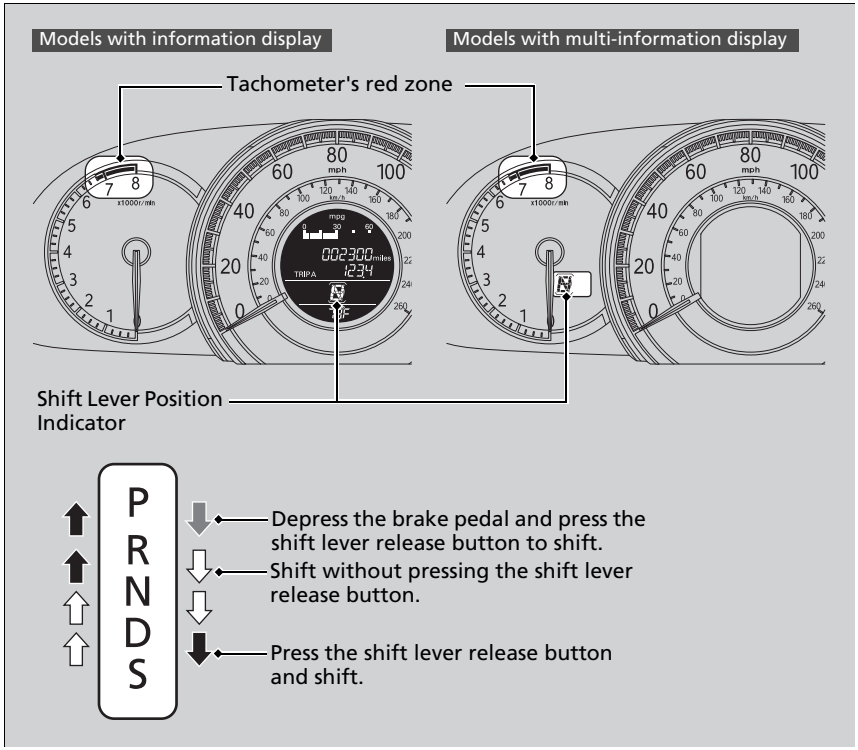
Shifting

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in P.

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

When shifting gears in extremely low temperatures (-22°F/-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift is indicated in the display. Always confirm you are in the correct gear before driving.

Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

Manual transmission models

Shifting

Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into R, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not "grind."

Shifting

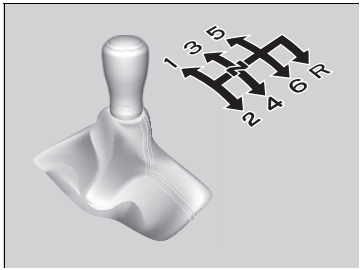
NOTICE

Do not shift to R before the vehicle comes to a complete stop.
Shifting to R before stopping can damage the transmission.

NOTICE

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

There is a metallic part on the shift lever. If you leave the vehicle parked outside for a long time on a hot day, be careful before moving the shift lever. Because of heat, the shift lever may be extremely hot. If the outside temperature is low, the shift lever may feel cold.



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

Shifting

Recommended Shift Points

Driving in the highest gear that allows the engine to run and accelerate smoothly helps to optimize fuel economy and effective emissions control. The following shift points are recommended:

LX models

Shift Up	Normal Acceleration
1st to 2nd	17 mph (27 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	29 mph (46 km/h)
3rd to 4th	37 mph (60 km/h)
4th to 5th	43 mph (69 km/h)
5th to 6th	49 mph (79 km/h)

Except LX models

Shift Up	Normal Acceleration
1st to 2nd	15 mph (24 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	25 mph (40 km/h)
3rd to 4th	40 mph (64 km/h)
4th to 5th	47 mph (76 km/h)
5th to 6th	52 mph (84 km/h)

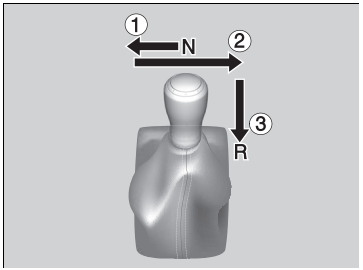
If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

Continued

Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout mechanism that stops you from accidentally shifting into R from a forward gear while the vehicle is moving above a certain speed.

If you cannot shift to R when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:

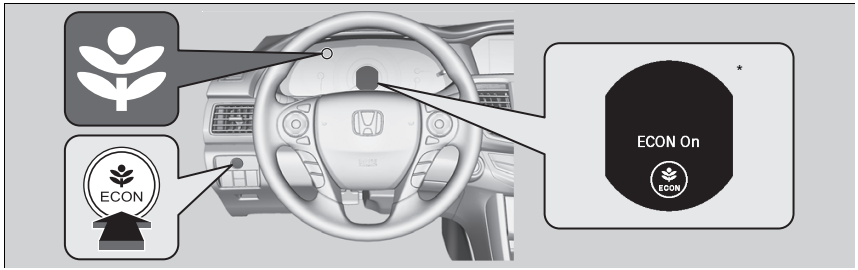


1. Depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever all the way to the left, and shift to R.
2. If you still cannot shift into R, apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY I or LOCK 0 *1.
3. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into R.
4. Keep depressing the clutch pedal and start the engine.

Have the vehicle checked by a dealer if you have to go through this procedure repeatedly.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

ECON Button



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.
The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, climate control system, and cruise control.

* Not available on all models

Cruise Control

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on freeways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

When to use

■Vehicle speed for cruise control:
Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~

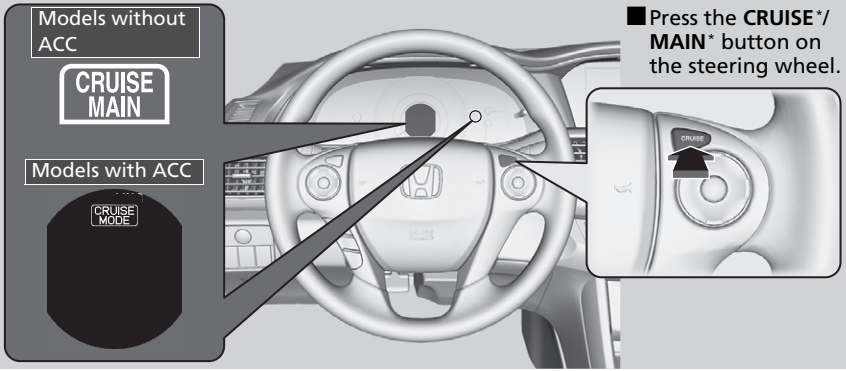
Automatic transmission/CVT models

■Shift positions for cruise control:
In D or S

Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.

How to use

CRUISE MAIN*/CRUISE MODE*
is on in the instrument panel.
Cruise control is ready to use.



■Press the **CRUISE***/**MAIN*** button on the steering wheel.

Cruise Control

⚠WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

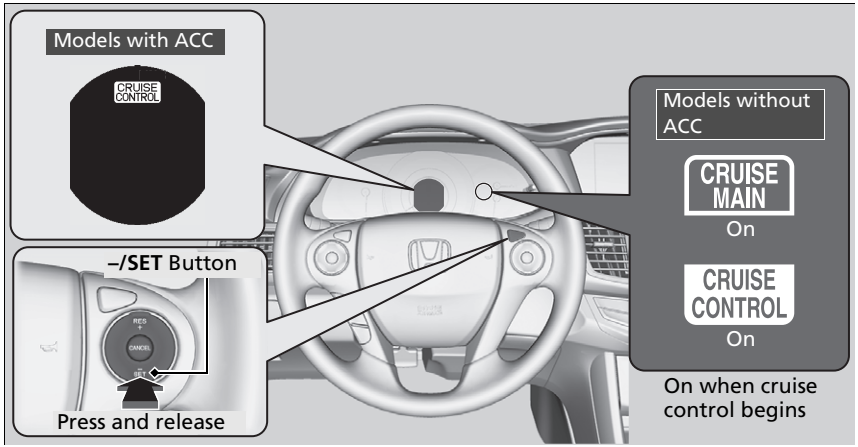
When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE***/**MAIN*** button.

While in the ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

Manual transmission models
When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.
You can maintain the set speed if you change gear within five seconds.

* Not available on all models

To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

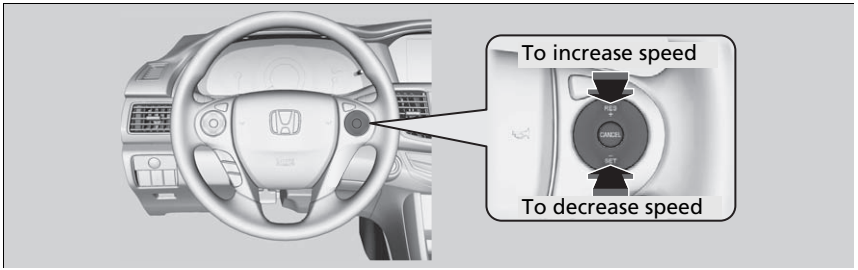
Models without adaptive cruise control

During cruise control, Straight Driving Assist Function is activated. This control function is an EPS function and it helps reduce the steering effort to keep the steering angle on a straight road with cants.

Continued

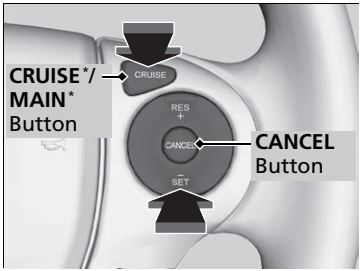
To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **–/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE***/**MAIN*** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **–/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:
After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When the **CRUISE***/**MAIN*** button is turned off

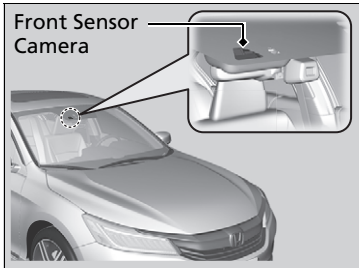
At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control is canceled automatically.

* Not available on all models

Front Sensor Camera*

The camera, used in systems such as LKAS, RDM, ACC, and CMBS™, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Sensor Camera*

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the hood, or the front grill that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Front Sensor Camera*

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield** message appears:

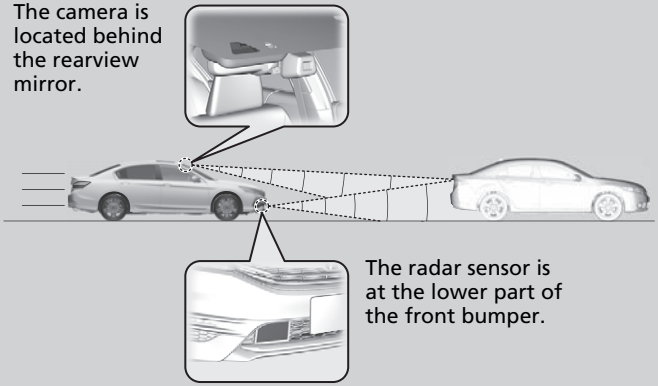
- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When to use



■Vehicle speed for adaptive cruise control: Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~
■Shift position for ACC: In D or S.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

⚠WARNING

ACC has limited braking capability.

When your vehicle speed drops below 22 mph (35 km/h), ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes.

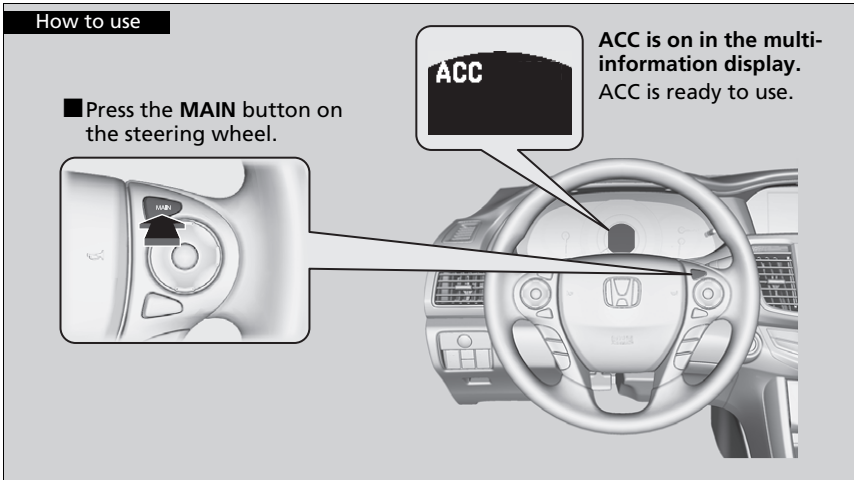
Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.

Be careful not to have the radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

* Not available on all models

Continued



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, ACC and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are both turned on or off.

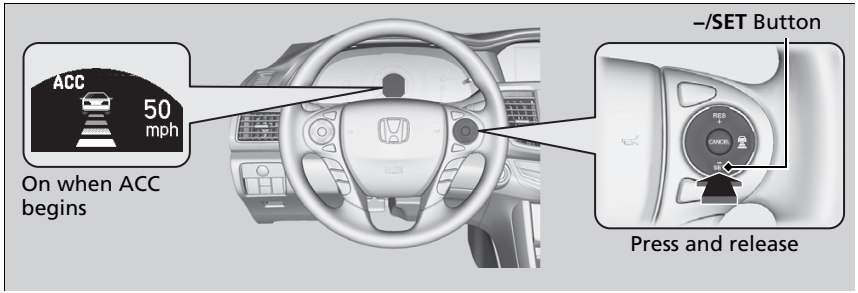
ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.
➡ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 452

When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

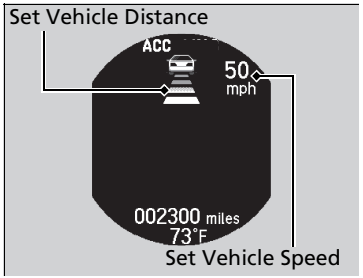
Do not use ACC under the following conditions:
- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

* Not available on all models

To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press down the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.



When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, distance bars and set speed appear on the multi-information display.

To Set the Vehicle Speed

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the multi-information display between mph and km/h.

Customized Features P. 103, 298, 316

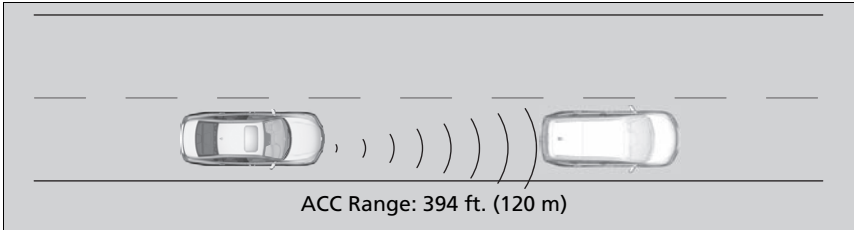
Continued

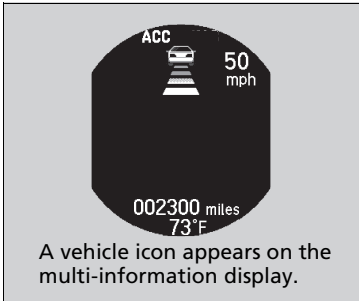
When in Operation

There is a vehicle ahead

ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-distance from the vehicle ahead.

To Set or Change Following-Distance P. 455



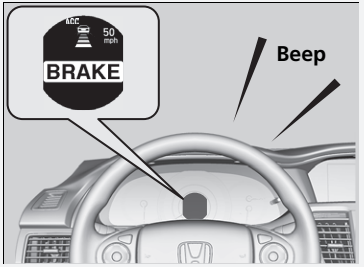


A vehicle icon appears on the multi-information display.

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the radar, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

If the vehicle detected ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle is detected cutting in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display.
Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.



Even if the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the distance between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range. Change the **ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep** setting.

Customized Features P. 103, 298, 316

■ There is no vehicle ahead

A vehicle icon with dotted-line contour appears on the multi-information display.

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from traveling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed.
ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed or a sufficient speed to keep the following-distance.

When you depress the accelerator pedal

While the accelerator pedal is depressed, the system does not apply the brakes to keep the following-distance, as well as the **BRAKE** message on the multi-information display does not appear.
➡ **When in Operation** P. 450

Continued

ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the radar sensor cover is dirty.
- When the front of the vehicle tilts up due to heavy cargo in the trunk or rear seats.
- When tire chains are installed.

ACC Conditions and Limitations

The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the collision mitigation braking system™ (CMBS™).

➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 483

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445

* Not available on all models

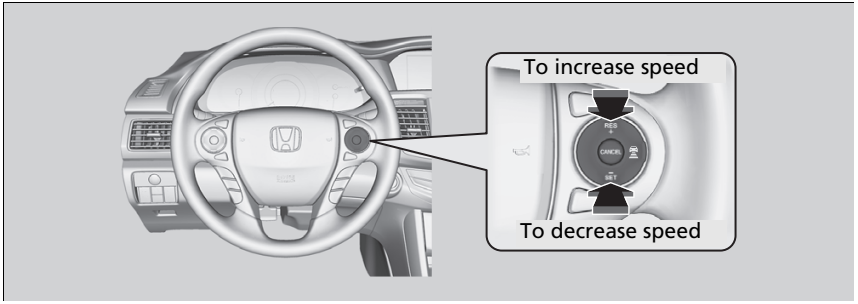
■ **Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

Continued

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **–/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.

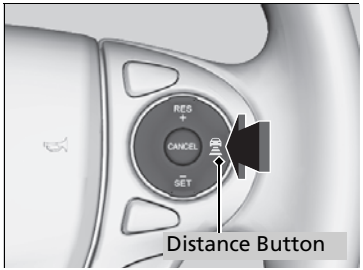


- Each time you press the switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the switch pressed up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set following-distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

To Set or Change Following-Distance



Press the (distance) button to change the ACC following-distance.
Each time you press the button, the following-distance (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-distances.

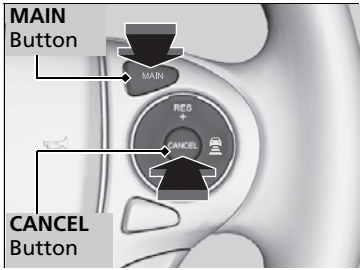
Determine the most appropriate following-distance setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-distance requirements set by local regulation.

Continued

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-distance becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Vehicle Distance		When the Set Speed is:	
		50 mph (80 km/h)	65 mph (104 km/h)
Short		84 feet 26 meters 1.1 sec	102 feet 31 meters 1.1 sec
Middle		111 feet 34 meters 1.5 sec	139 feet 43 meters 1.5 sec
Long		155 feet 48 meters 2.1 sec	202 feet 62 meters 2.1 sec
Extra Long		215 feet 66 meters 3.0 sec	285 feet 87 meters 3.0 sec

To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  ▶ The **ACC** indicator (white) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled ACC, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button when driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

Continued

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display when ACC is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor at the lower part of the front bumper gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA® or CMBS™ is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA® system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.

Automatic cancellation

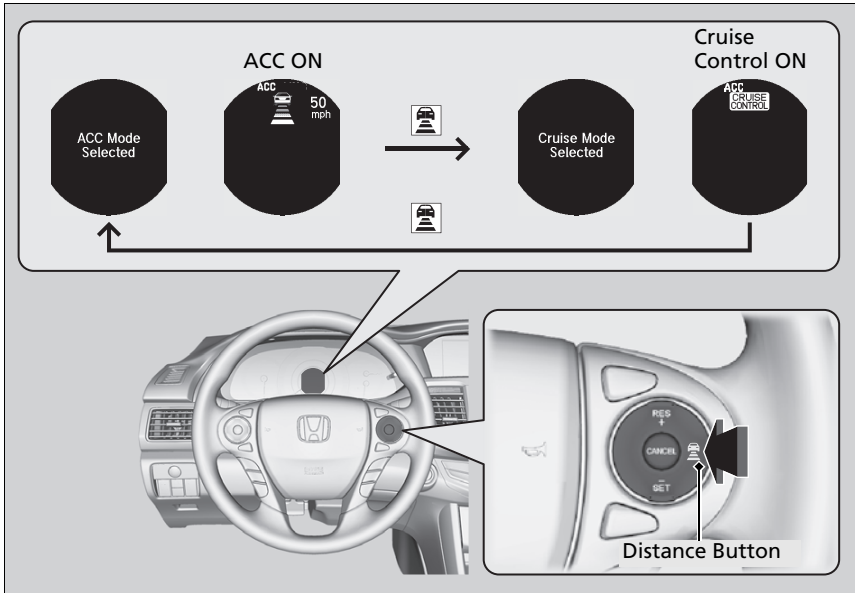
Even though ACC has been automatically canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves, then press the **RES/+** button.

To Switch ACC to Cruise Control

Press and hold the (distance) button for one second.

Cruise Mode Selected appears on the multi-information display for two seconds, and then the mode switches to Cruise.

To switch back to ACC, press and hold the button again for one second.



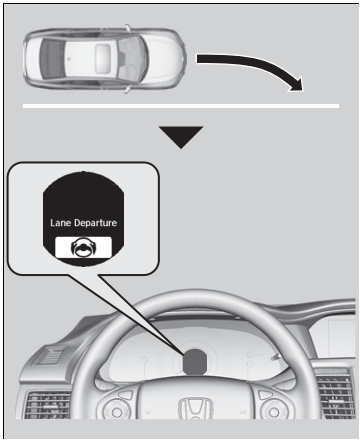
To Switch ACC to Cruise Control

Always be aware which mode you are in. When you are driving in Cruise mode, the system will not assist you to maintain a following-distance from a vehicle ahead of you.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system determines a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings.

How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

As a visual alert, the **Lane Departure** message appears on the multi-information display.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the RDM system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the RDM system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The RDM system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The RDM system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445

The RDM system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➡ **RDM Conditions and Limitations** P. 462

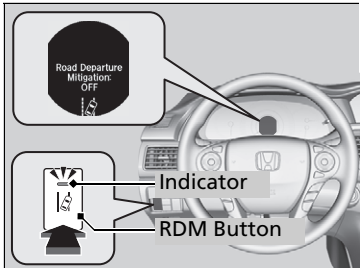
* Not available on all models

How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

RDM On and Off



Press the RDM button to turn the system on and off.

▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the multi-information display when the system is on.

How the System Activates

The RDM system may automatically shut off and the indicator comes and stays on.

➔ **Indicators** P. 68

RDM system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

RDM On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the multi-information display, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

Continued

RDM Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

■ Vehicle conditions

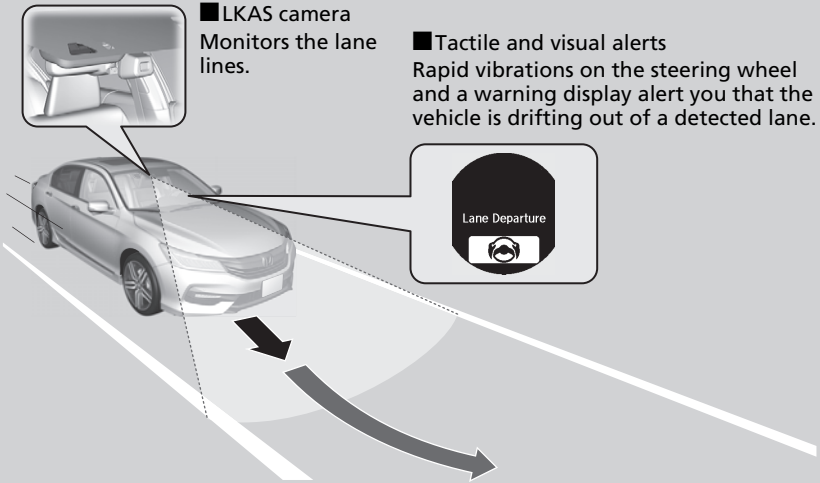
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages* P. 93

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windshield and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on freeways.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 469

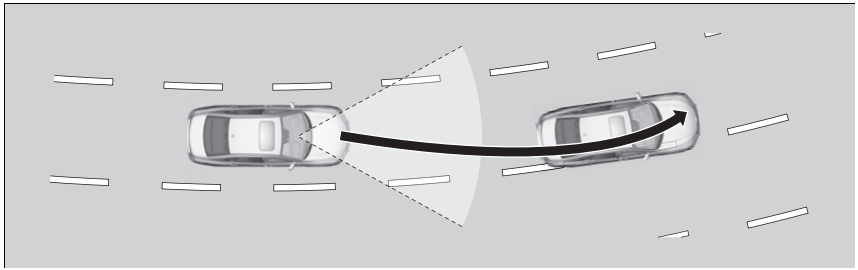
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 445

* Not available on all models

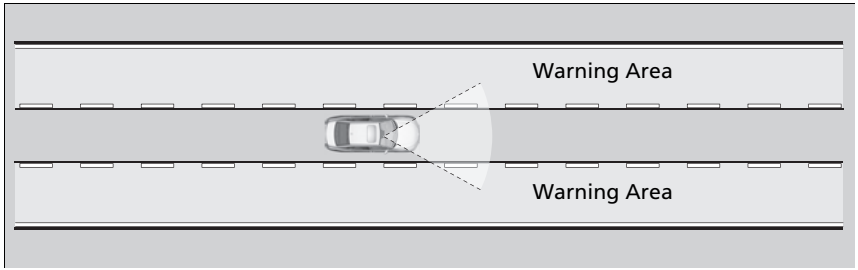
Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

The LKAS may not function as designed on while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be canceled. When lane is detected, system will recover automatically.

* Not available on all models

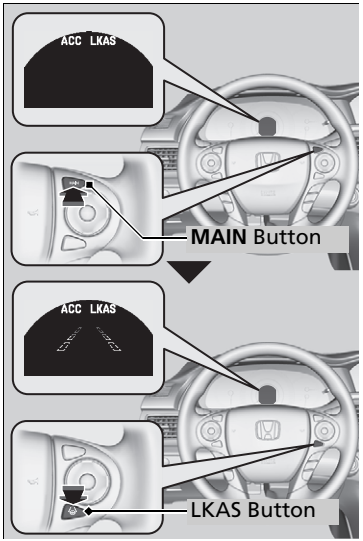
Continued

When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
- The vehicle speed is between 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

How to activate the system

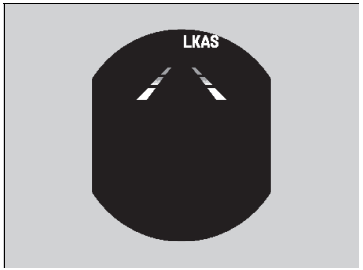


1. Press the **MAIN** button.
▶ The LKAS is on in the multi-information display.
The system is ready to use.

2. Press the LKAS button.
▶ Lane outlines appear on the multi-information display.
The system is activated.

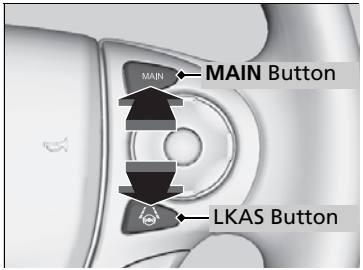
When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



3. Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.
▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To cancel



To cancel the LKAS:
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

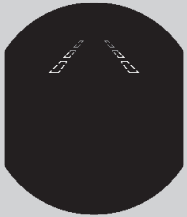
When the System can be Used

The LKAS temporarily deactivates when it fails to detect lane lines. When the system detects the lines again, it comes back on automatically.

To cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC on and off.

Continued



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the multi-information display change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds.

■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
  ▶ Turning the wipers off resumes the LKAS.

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** and the wipers operate continuously.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

All models

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 40 mph (64 km/h) or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 45 mph (72 km/h) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- The vehicle runs on a curved road over the speed limit.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 90 mph (145 km/h).

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ The LKAS may automatically be canceled when:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically canceled.

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.

Continued

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

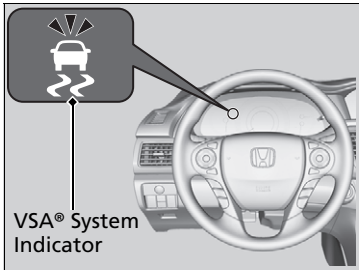
■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

Helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA® Operation



When VSA® activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

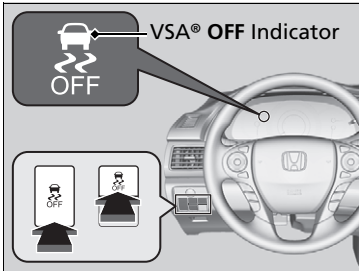
When the VSA® indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

Continued

VSA® OFF Button



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially turn the VSA features on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

The traction control stops fully functioning, allows the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. The VSA® OFF indicator will also come on.

To turn it on again, press the (VSA® **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

With the button pressed, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but VSA® traction and stability enhancement becomes less effective.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA® temporarily switched off.

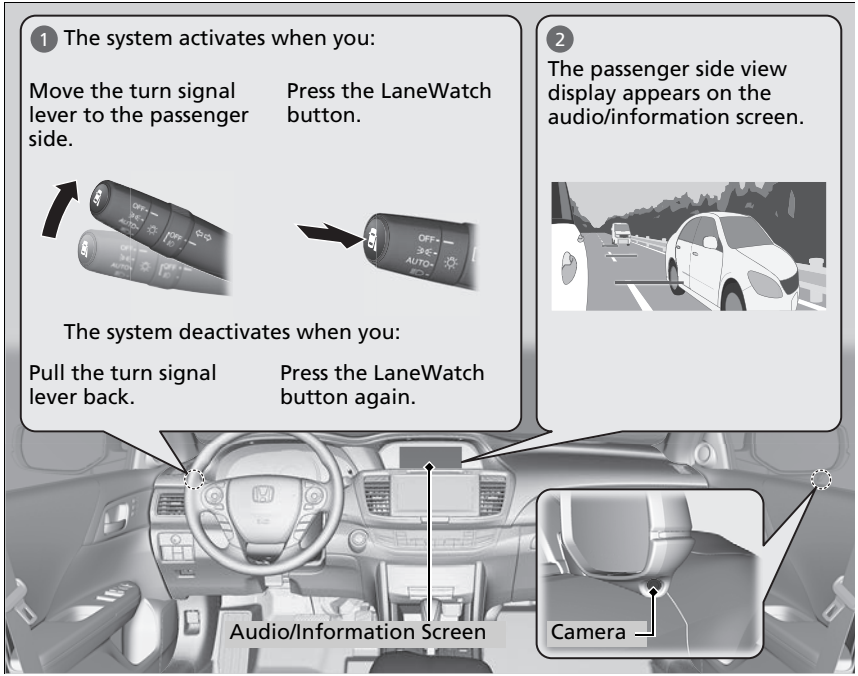
When the button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA® off if you are not able to free it when the VSA® is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

LaneWatch™*

Is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.



LaneWatch™*

WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:
- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tires are over or under inflated.
- Your tires or wheels are of varied size or construction.

* Not available on all models

Continued

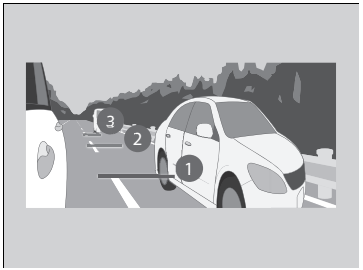
■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information touch screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal**: Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal light lever.
- **Reference Lines**: Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display Time after Turn Off**: Changes the remaining LaneWatch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Display**: Adjusts display settings.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 316

■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 farther away.

LaneWatch™*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in R.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

* Not available on all models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tire, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tire while you are driving to determine if one or more tires are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the multi-information display*.

TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tires.
- Rotate the tires.
- Replace one or more tires.

Before calibrating the TPMS:
- Set the cold tire pressure in all four tires.
  ➡ **Checking Tires** P. 539

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.

Manual transmission models
- The shift lever is in N.

Automatic transmission/CVT models
- The shift lever is in P.

All models
- The ignition switch is in ON II*1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tires when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

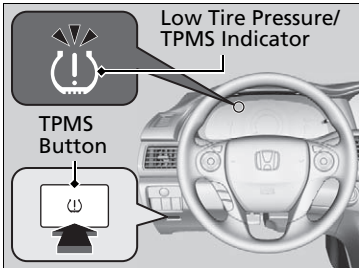
Tire pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

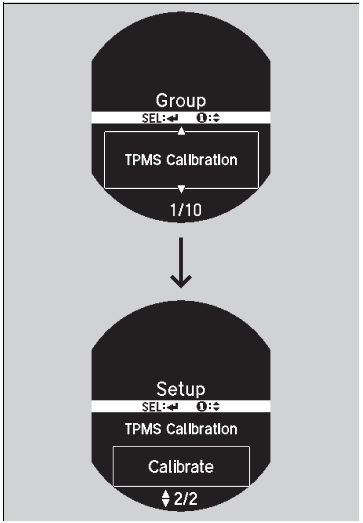
The low tire pressure indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire.
➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 539

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- A compact spare tire is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tires, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Snow chains are used.





Models with information display

Press and hold the TPMS button until the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator blinks twice, indicating the calibration process has begun.

- If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator does not blink, confirm the above conditions then press and hold the TPMS button again.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Models with multi-information display

You can calibrate the system from the customized features on the multi-information display.

1. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
   ▶ **TPMS Calibration** appears on the display.
2. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
   ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.
3. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button and select **Calibrate**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
   ▶ **Calibration Started** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Calibration Failed to Start** message appears, repeat steps 2-3.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

TPMS Calibration

- TPMS cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tire is installed.
- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 30-60 mph (48-97 km/h).
- During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tire pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

You can calibrate the system using the audio/information screen* or audio/information touch screen*.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 298, 316

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tires are installed, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tires be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

* Not available on all models

U.S. models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale

when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Continued

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

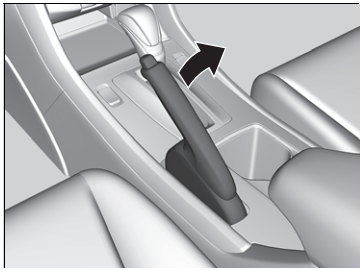
TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

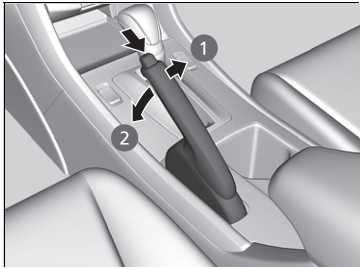
Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.



To apply:
Pull the lever fully up without pressing the release button.



To release:
1. Pull the lever slightly, and press and hold the release button.
2. Lower the lever down all the way, then release the button.

Parking Brake

NOTICE
Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning, and **Release Parking Brake** appears on the multi-information display*.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➔ **Brake Assist System** P. 482
➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 481

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use an incorrect tire type and size.

When the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking is not affected, there is a possibility of the ABS not operating. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during hard braking.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more stopping distance than a vehicle without the ABS:
- When driving on rough road surfaces, including when driving on uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- When snow chains are installed.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Brake Assist System

■ Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

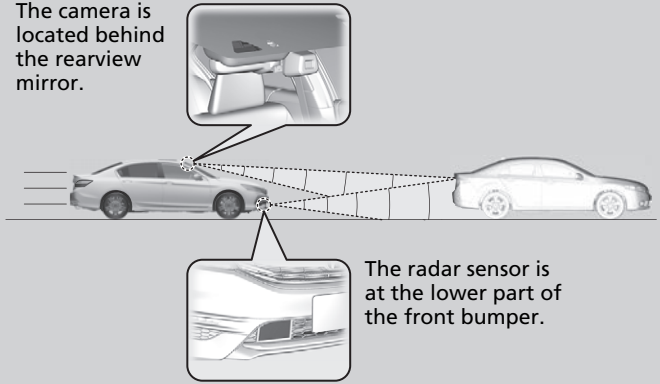
When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

■ How the system works

When to use



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS™ activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 3 mph (5 km/h) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 62 mph (100 km/h) or less and there is a chance of a collision with an oncoming detected vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS™ may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

➔ **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 487

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➔ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445

Be careful not to have the radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

How the system works

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel alert you when your vehicle speed is between 19 and 62 mph (30 and 100 km/h) with an oncoming vehicle detected in front of you.

When the CMBS™ activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be canceled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

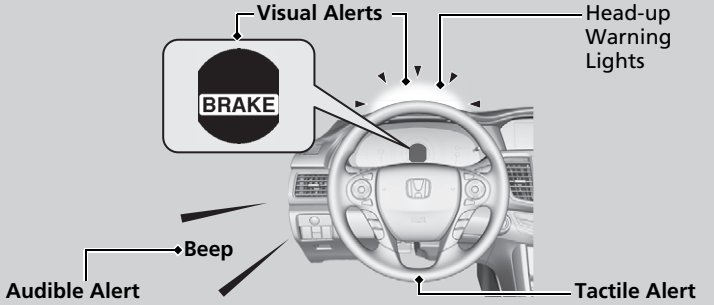
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When the system activates

The system provides visual, audible and tactile alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Long**/**Normal**/**Short**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through multi-information display setting options.

➡ **List of customizable options** P. 106

■ Vibration alert on the steering wheel

When a potential collision to an oncoming detected vehicle is determined, the system alerts you with rapid vibration on the steering wheel, in addition to visual and audible alerts.

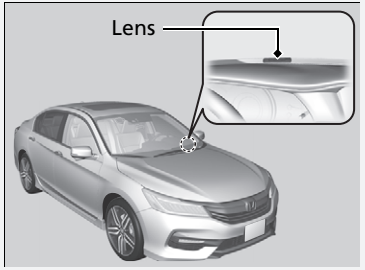
▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, operate the steering wheel, etc.).

When the system activates

The camera in the CMBS™ is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

➡ **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 487

The head-up warning uses a lens located at the front end of the dashboard.
Do not cover the lens or spill any liquid on it.



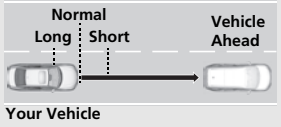
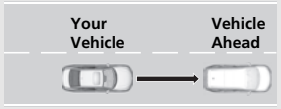
Vibration alert on the steering wheel

Vibration alert function is disabled when the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator comes on.

➡ **Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator** P. 74

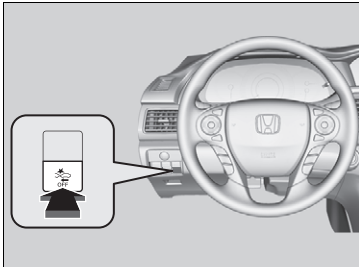
Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS™			
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Steering Wheel	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in **Long**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.	In case of an oncoming vehicle detected, rapid vibration is provided.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	—	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS™ determines that a collision is unavoidable.			Forcefully applied

Continued

CMBS™ On and Off



Press this button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS™ is off:

- The beeper sounds.
- The CMBS™ indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the multi-information display reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS™ is in the previously selected ON or OFF setting each time you start the engine.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*

The CMBS™ may automatically shut off, and the CMBS™ indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions:

➔ **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 487

* Not available on all models

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS™ indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS™ functions.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 445

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor at the lower part of the front bumper gets dirty.

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 3.3 feet (1 meter) or taller than about 6.6 feet (2 meters) in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

Continued

With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS™ may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

■ On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

■ Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects [such as a traffic sign and guard rail] on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*

For the CMBS™ to work properly:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS™ off button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

* Not available on all models

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.

Automatic transmission/CVT models

3. Move the shift lever from D to P.

Manual transmission models

3. Move the shift lever to R or 1.

All models

4. Turn off the engine.

Always set the parking brake firmly, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

When Stopped

Automatic transmission/CVT models

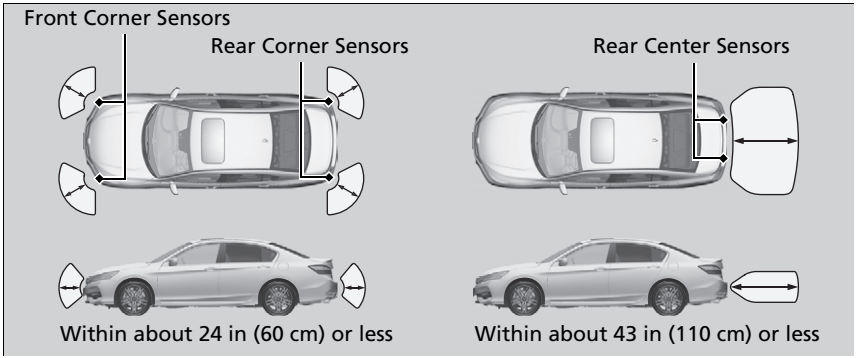
NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into P before the vehicle stops completely.

Parking Sensor System*

The corner and center sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

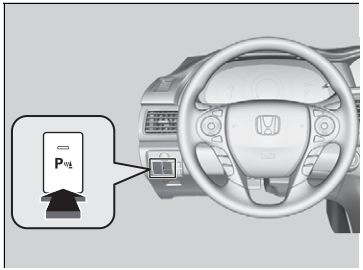
The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

* Not available on all models

■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The rear center and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The front corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in any position other than P, and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

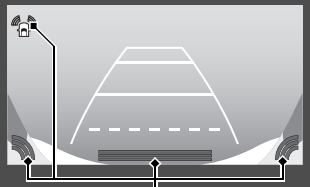
Parking Sensor System*

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Center Sensors		
Moderate	—	Rear: About 43-24 in (110-60 cm)	Blinks in Yellow*1	Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.  Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.
Short	About 24-18 in (60-45 cm)	About 24-18 in (60-45 cm)	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 18-14 in (45-35 cm)	About 18-14 in (45-35 cm)		
Continuous	About 14 in (35 cm) or less	About 14 in (35 cm) or less	Blinks in Red	

*1:At this stage, only the center sensors detect obstacles.

Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for ten seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button blinks.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
   ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

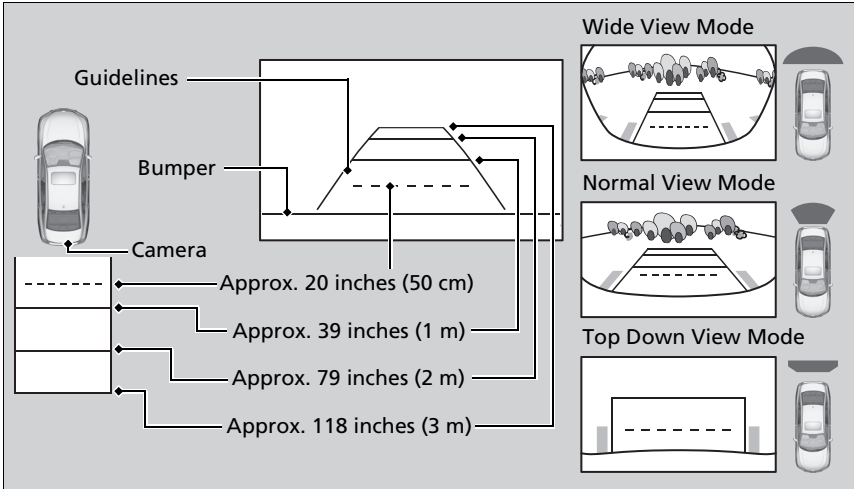
Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you shift to R, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the shift lever is moved to R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display. Press the selector knob or the interface dial to switch the angle.

If the last used viewing mode is Wide or Normal, the same mode is selected the next time you shift into R. If Top View was last used, Wide mode is selected. If you shift out of R in Top View mode, then shift into R again 10 seconds later, Wide mode is selected.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 298, 316

Fixed Guideline
On: Guidelines appear when you shift into R.
Off: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline
On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
Off: Guidelines do not move.

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher

Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ Top tier detergent gasoline

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today's advanced engines.

Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit *www.hondacars.com.* In Canada, visit *www.honda.ca* for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit *www.toptiergas.com*.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 17.2 US gal (65 liters)

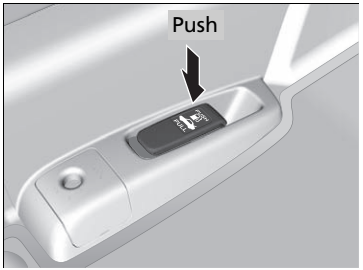
Fuel Information

NOTICE

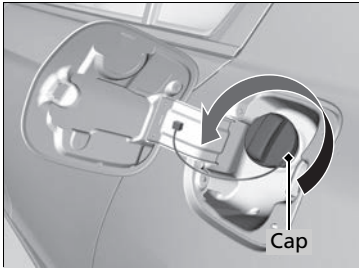
We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.

Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service.
Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

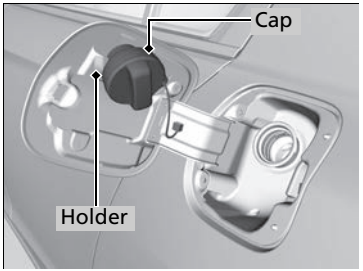
How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Push on the fuel fill door release handle at the foot of the driver's seat.
   ▶ The fuel fill door opens.



4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.



5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the filler nozzle fully.
   ▶ When the tank is full, the fuel nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
   ▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

If the fuel nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.

Do not continue to add fuel after the nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

Improving Fuel Economy

Fuel economy depends on several conditions, including driving conditions, your driving habits, the condition of your vehicle, and loading. Depending on these and other conditions, you may or may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

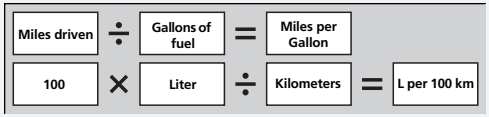
Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the information display*/multi-information display*.

- Use the recommended viscosity engine oil, displaying the API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test. For more information on how this test is performed, please visit *http://oee.nrcan.gc.ca/*

* Not available on all models

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install accessories over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.
  Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  Fuses P. 578
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle or use non-Honda components that can affect its handling, stability, and reliability.

Overall vehicle performance can be affected. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.

Before Performing Maintenance
Inspection and Maintenance 502
Safety When Performing Maintenance..... 503
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 504
Maintenance Minder™ 505
Maintenance Under the Hood
Maintenance Items Under the Hood..... 513
Opening the Hood 515
Recommended Engine Oil 517
Oil Check 518
Adding Engine Oil 520
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter 521
Engine Coolant 523
Transmission Fluid 525
Brake/Clutch Fluid 527
Refilling Window Washer Fluid..... 528
Replacing Light Bulbs 529
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 537
Checking and Maintaining Tires
Checking Tires 539
Tire and Loading Information Label..... 540
Tire Labeling 540
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles).....542
Wear Indicators..... 544
Tire Service Life 544
Tire and Wheel Replacement 545
Tire Rotation 546
Winter Tires 547
Battery..... 548
Remote Transmitter Care
Replacing the Button Battery 549
Climate Control System Maintenance 551
Cleaning
Interior Care 552
Exterior Care..... 554

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.)

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  Brake/Clutch Fluid P. 527
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 539
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  Replacing Light Bulbs P. 529
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 537

Inspection and Maintenance

U.S. models

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are "certified" to EPA standards.

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the information display*/multi-information display*.

Maintenance Service Items P. 507, 511

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at *www.techinfo.honda.com*.

Authorized Manuals P. 595

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.

* Not available on all models

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here.
However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Operate the engine only when there is sufficient ventilation.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

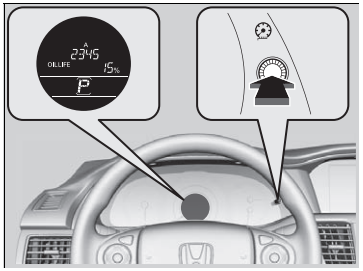
If the engine oil life is less than 15%, you will see the Maintenance Minder messages appear on the information display* or the multi-information display* every time you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1. The messages notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

Models with information display

To Use Maintenance Minder™

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Maintenance items, which should be serviced at the same time that you replace the engine oil, appear on the information display.
You can view them on the engine oil life screen at any time.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.
2. Press the (Select/Reset) knob repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the information display.

The Maintenance Minder indicator ( ) stays on in the instrument panel after the engine oil life becomes **0%**. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the information display.
Maintenance Service Items P. 507

* Not available on all models

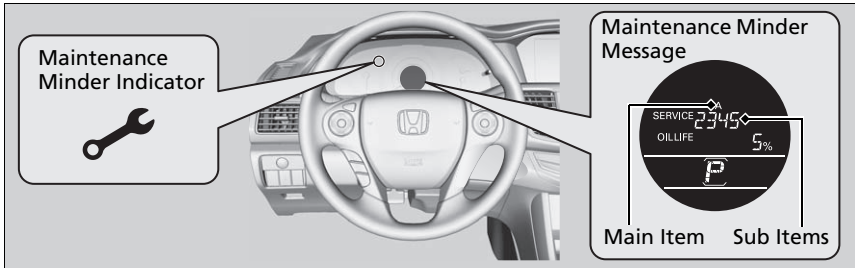
Continued

Maintenance Minder Messages on the Information Display

To switch the display, press the (Select/Reset) knob.

Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information	Maintenance Minder Indicator
	The engine oil life indicator starts to appear along with other due soon maintenance item codes when the remaining oil life becomes 15 percent.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.	Starts to come on when the remaining engine oil life becomes 15 percent. It goes off when the display is switched.
	The **SERVICE** message also starts to appear along with the engine oil life indicator and the maintenance item codes.	The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.	
	The remaining engine oil life has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). The negative distance on the display blinks.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.	Stays on as a reminder even when the display is switched.

Maintenance Service Items



Maintenance Service Items

- Independent of the Maintenance Minder information, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1
B	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter • Inspect front and rear brakes/service as necessary • Check parking brake adjustment • Inspect tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots • Inspect suspension components • Inspect driveshaft boots • Inspect brake hoses and lines (Including ABS/VSA) • Inspect all fluid levels and condition of fluids • Inspect exhaust system# • Inspect fuel lines and connections#

*1: If a message **SERVICE** does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

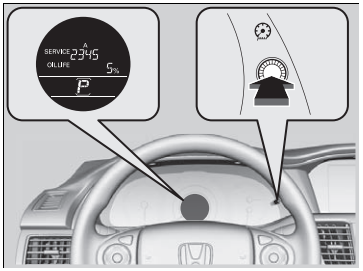
CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4,*5
4	• Replace spark plugs • Replace timing belt and inspect water pump*6,*7 • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant

*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*4: Continuously variable transmission (CVT) models
*5: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 25,000 miles (40,000 km).
*6: 6-cylinder models
*7: If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110 °F, 43 °C), in very low temperatures (under -20 °F, -29 °C), or tow a trailer, replace every 60,000 miles/100,000 km.

Continued

Resetting the Display

Reset the maintenance minder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1.
2. Display the engine oil life by repeatedly pressing the (Select/Reset) knob.
3. Press and hold the knob for ten seconds or more.
   ▶ The engine oil life indicator and the maintenance item codes blink.
4. Press the knob for five seconds or more.
   ▶ The displayed maintenance items disappear, and the engine oil life display returns to **100%**.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the Maintenance Minder™ display display yourself.

You can reset the Maintenance Minder™ display display using the audio/information screen* or audio/information touch screen*.

Customized Features P. 298, 316

* Not available on all models

Models with multi-information display

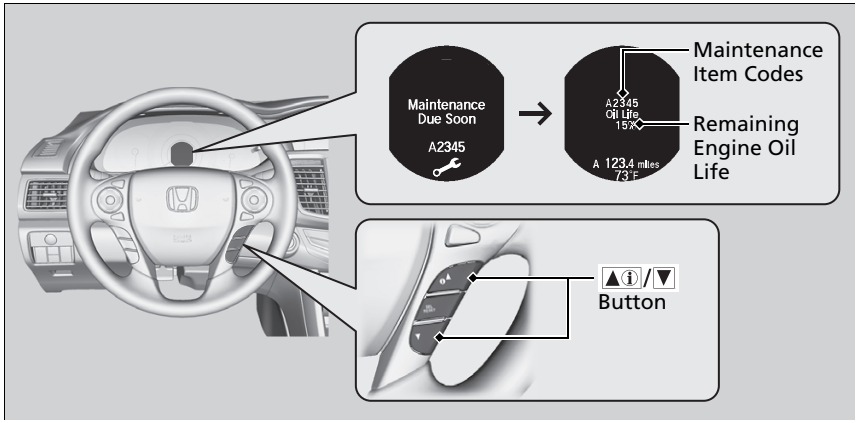
To Use Maintenance Minder™

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Maintenance items, which should be serviced at the same time that you replace the engine oil, appear on the multi-information display.
You can view them on the engine oil life screen at any time.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1.

2. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ (Information) button repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the multi-information display.



*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

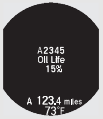
Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the information display.

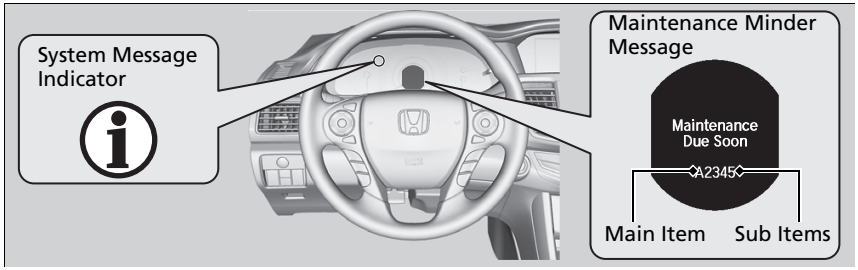
➡ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 511

Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display

Maintenance Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
Maintenance Due Soon	15 % 	The remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent. Once you switch the display by pressing the ▲ⓘ/▼ (Information) button, this message will go off.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced soon.
Maintenance Due Now	5 %	The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button to switch to another display.	The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
Maintenance Past Due	Negative Distance	The remaining engine oil life has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). Press the ▲ⓘ/▼ button to switch to another display.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.

Maintenance Service Items



Maintenance Service Items

- Independent of the Maintenance Minder information, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1
B	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter • Inspect front and rear brakes/service as necessary • Check parking brake adjustment • Inspect tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots • Inspect suspension components • Inspect driveshaft boots • Inspect brake hoses and lines (Including ABS/VSA) • Inspect all fluid levels and condition of fluids • Inspect exhaust system# • Inspect fuel lines and connections#

*1: If a message **Service** does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

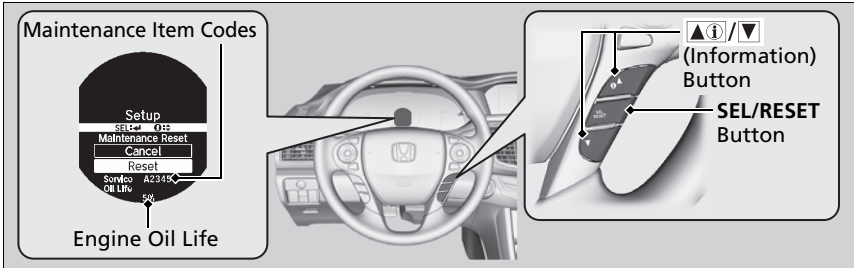
CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4, *5
4	• Replace spark plugs • Replace timing belt and inspect water pump*6, *7 • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant

*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*4: Continuously variable transmission (CVT) models
*5: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 25,000 miles (40,000 km).
*6: 6-cylinder models
*7: If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110 °F, 43 °C), in very low temperatures (under -20 °F, -29 °C), or tow a trailer, replace every 60,000 miles/100,000 km.

Continued

Resetting the Display

Reset the maintenance minder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON [II]*1.
2. Press the [▲ⓘ]/[▼] button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
3. Press the [▲ⓘ]/[▼] button until **Maintenance Reset** appears on the display.
4. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
   ▶ The oil life reset mode is displayed on the multi-information display.
5. Select **Reset** with the [▲ⓘ]/[▼] button, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
   ▶ The displayed maintenance items disappear, and the engine oil life display returns to **100%**.

To cancel the oil life reset mode, select **Cancel**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the Maintenance Minder™ display yourself.

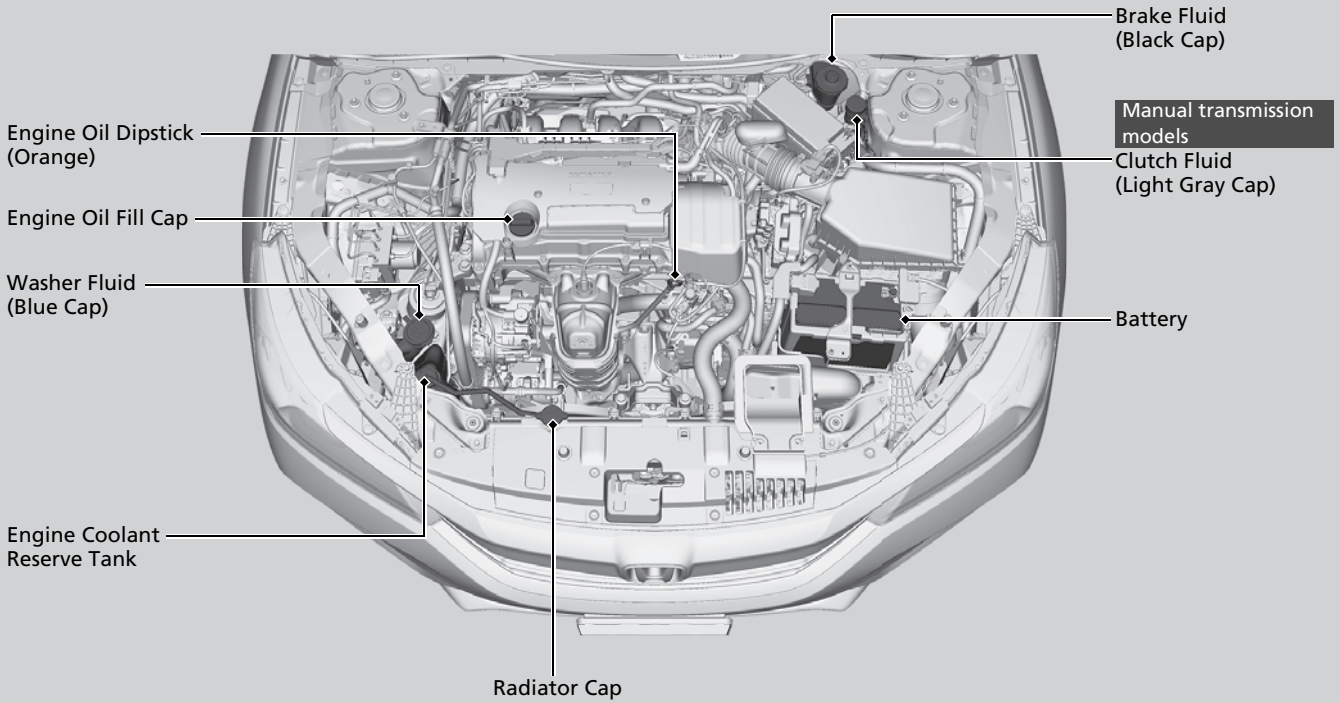
You can reset the Maintenance Minder™ display using the audio/information screen* or audio/information touch screen*.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 298, 316

* Not available on all models

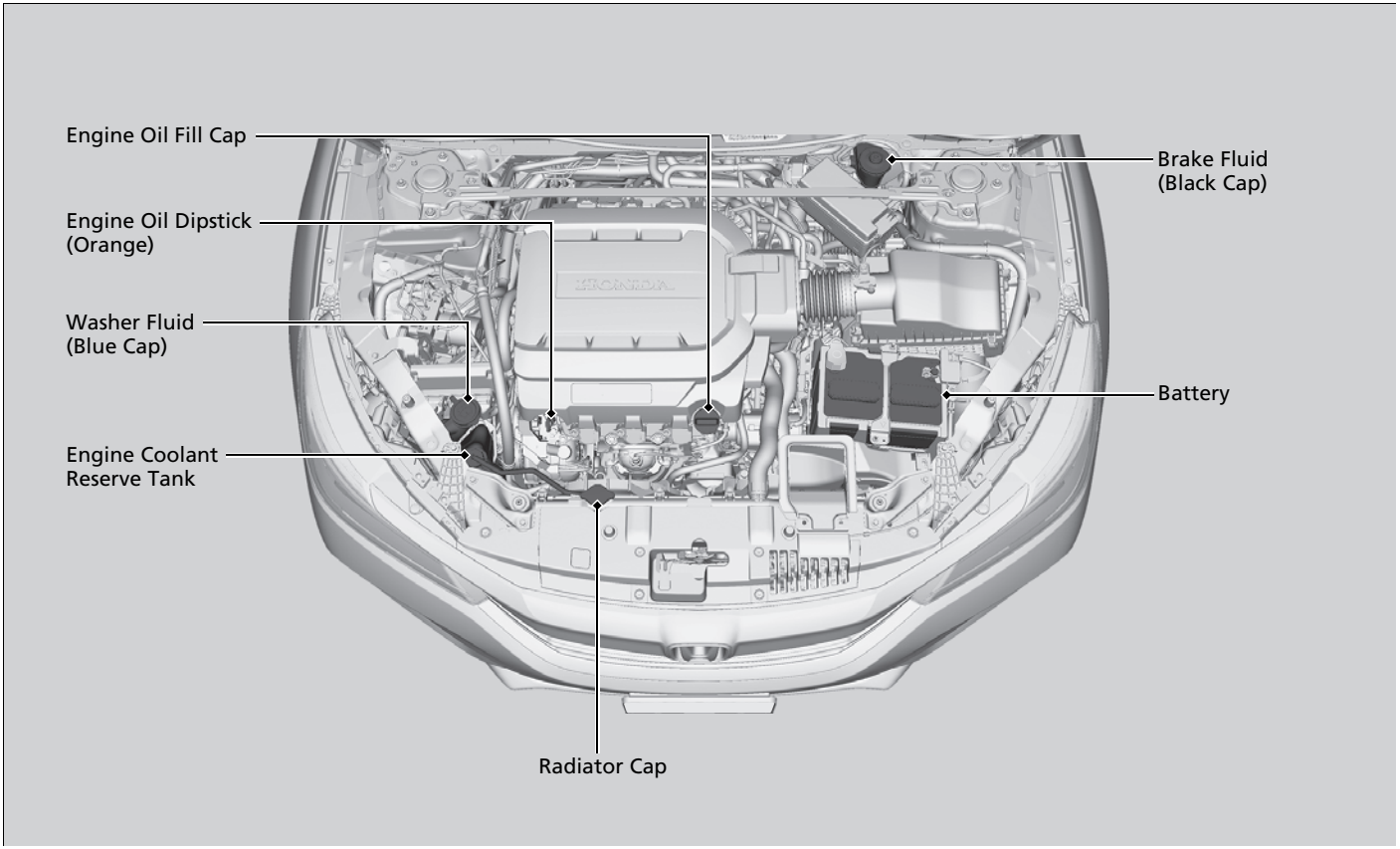
Maintenance Items Under the Hood

4-cylinder models



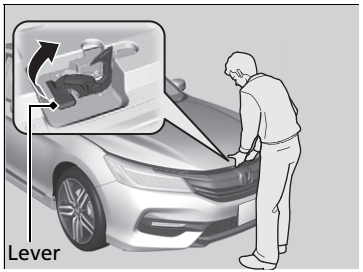
Continued

6-cylinder models

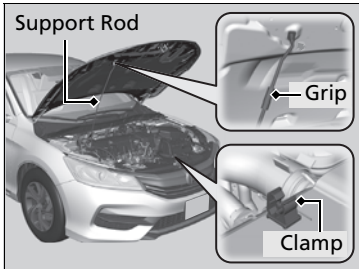


Opening the Hood

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The hood will pop up slightly.



3. Push up the hood latch lever in the center of the hood to release the lock mechanism, and open the hood.



4-cylinder models

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the hood.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the hood. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and let the hood close.

Continued

Opening the Hood

NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised.
The hood will strike the wipers, and may damage either the hood or the wipers.

When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

6-cylinder models

4. Lift the hood up most of the way.
▶ The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

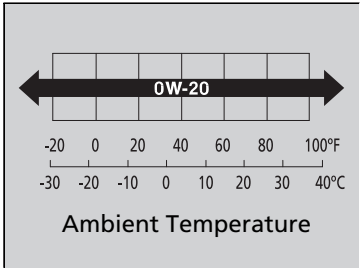
When closing, lower it to approximately 12 inches (30 cm), then press down firmly with your hands.

Recommended Engine Oil

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.**

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.



Use Genuine Honda Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown here.

■ Synthetic oil

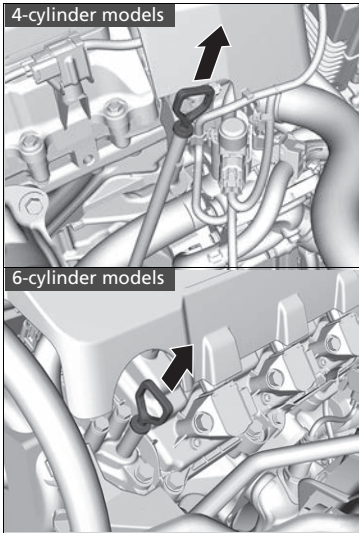
You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Oil Check

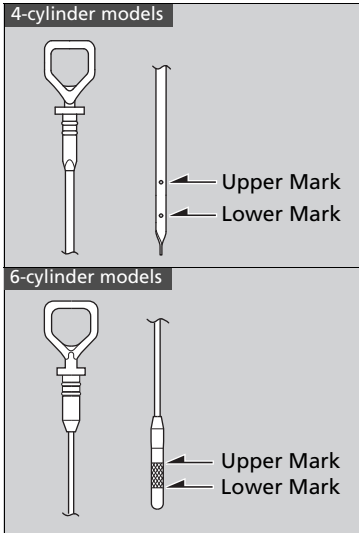
We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.
Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

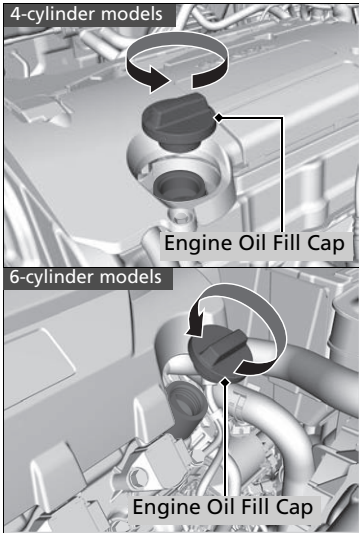
Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil being careful not to overfill.



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

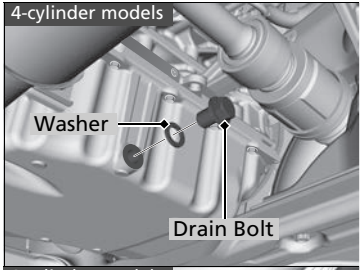
NOTICE

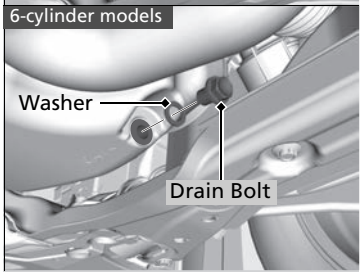
Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the information display*/multi-information display*.





1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
3. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

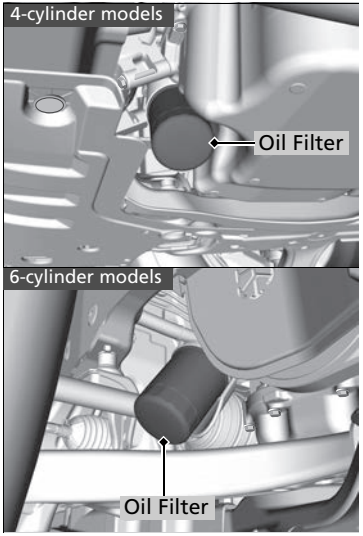
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

NOTICE

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.

* Not available on all models

Continued



4. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.
5. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.
▶ If it is stuck, you must detach it.
6. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.
▶ Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the oil gasket.
7. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.
▶ Tightening torque:

4-cylinder models

30 lbf·ft (40 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)

6-cylinder models

29 lbf·ft (39 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)

8. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.
▶ Engine oil change capacity (including filter):

4-cylinder models

4.4 US qt (4.2 L)

6-cylinder models

4.5 US qt (4.3 L)

9. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.
10. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.
11. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.
▶ If necessary, add more engine oil.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

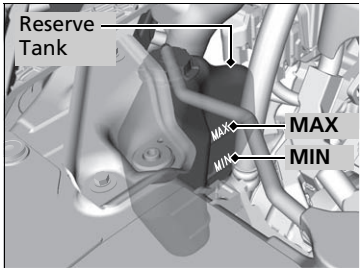
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

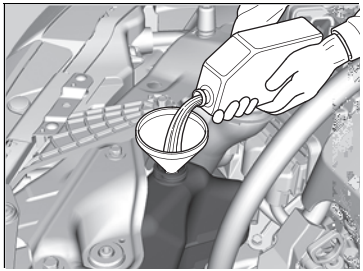
This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



1. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.



2. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Continued

Engine Coolant

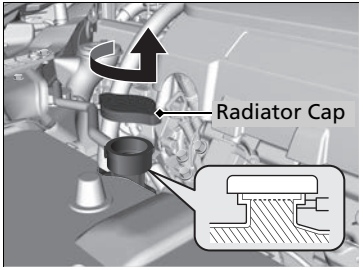
NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below –22°F (–30°C) are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult a dealer for more information.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap counterclockwise to relieve any pressure in the cooling system. Do not push the cap down when turning.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap counterclockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.
6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

Radiator

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

4-cylinder models with continuously variable transmission (CVT)

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.
Using a transmission fluid other than HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission. Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle warranty.

4-cylinder models with manual transmission

Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF)

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Manual Transmission Fluid

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certificated SAE 0 W-20 or 5 W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.
Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

Continued

6-cylinder models

Automatic Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid)

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

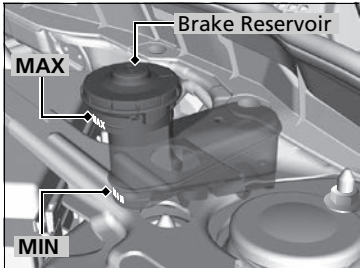
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle warranty.

Brake/Clutch Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

Use the same fluid for both the brakes and clutch.

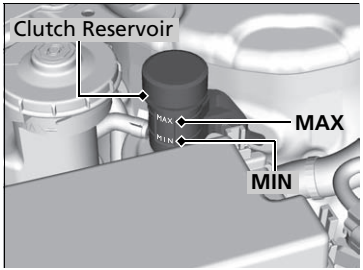
Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reservoir.

Manual transmission models

Checking the Clutch Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reservoir.

Brake/Clutch Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

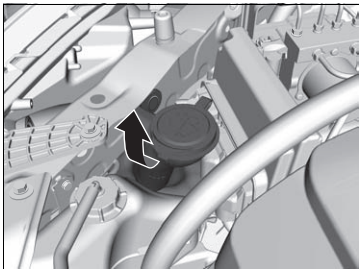
If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Checking the Clutch Fluid

If the clutch fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect for leaks or an excessively worn clutch plate as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Canadian models with information display

If the washer fluid is low, the washer level indicator comes on.

Canadian models with multi-information display

If the washer fluid is low, a message appears on the multi-information display.

All models

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.

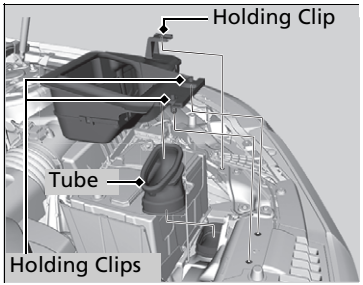
Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

High beam headlight: LED type*
High beam headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)*
Low beam headlight: LED type*
Low beam headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)*

High Beam Headlights

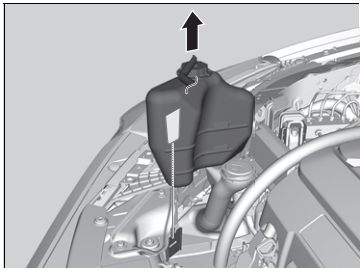
Models with halogen headlights



Driver side

6-cylinder models

1. Unlock the holding clips, then remove the upper part of the air intake duct and the air intake tube.



Passenger side

All models

1. Remove the reserve tank.

Headlight Bulbs

Models with halogen headlights

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit.
Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

All models

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with halogen headlights

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

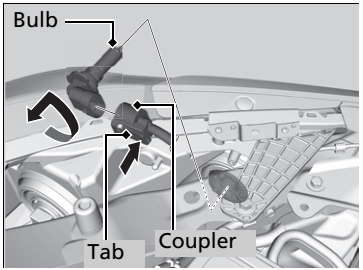
High Beam Headlights

Models with LED headlights

High beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

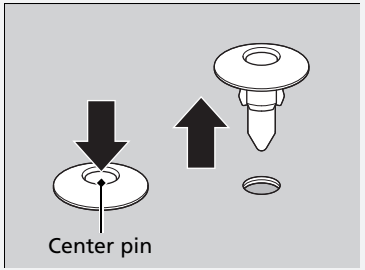


2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

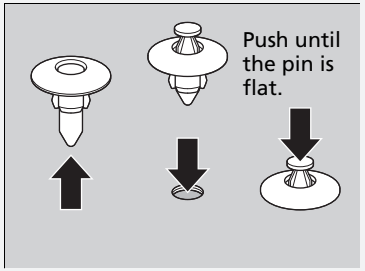
High Beam Headlights

Holding clip

Press down the center pin until it clicks to unlock it.

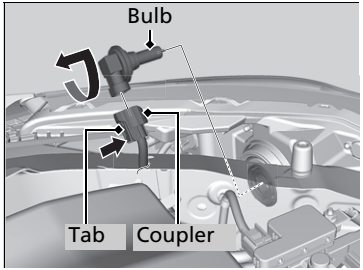


Push the center pin back to lock the clip. Then, insert the clip into the hole and press on the center pin until it is flat.



Low Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Fog Lights*

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Models with LED type parking/daytime running lights

Parking/Daytime Running Lights

Parking/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Models with LED headlights

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Low Beam Headlights

Models with LED headlights

Low beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

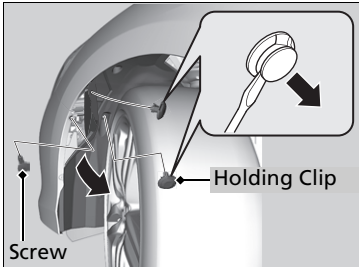
* Not available on all models

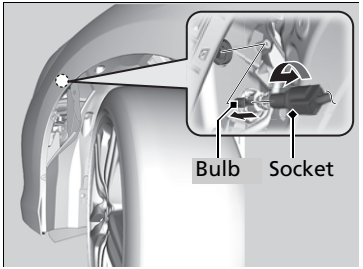
Models with LED headlights

Front Side Marker Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Side Marker Light: 3 CP

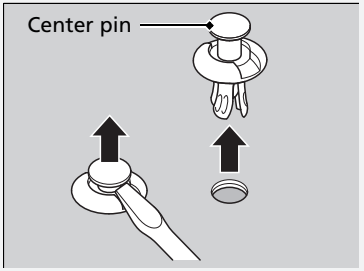




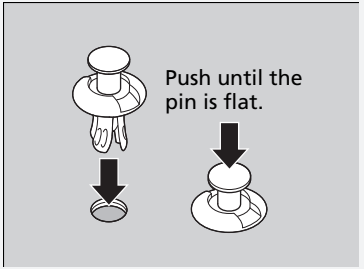
1. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the opposite side from the light being replaced.
   Passenger side: Turn the steering wheel to the left.
   Driver side: Turn the steering wheel to the right.
2. Remove the holding clips and screw, and pull the inner fender back.
3. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Front Side Marker Light Bulbs

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the center pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the center pin raised, and push until it is flat.



Models with halogen headlights and LED type parking/daytime running lights

Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Light Bulbs

Models with halogen headlights and bulb type parking lights

Front Turn Signal/Side Marker/Parking Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Models with halogen headlights and LED type parking/daytime running lights

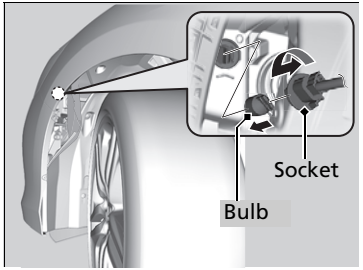
Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Light Bulbs: 28/8 W (Amber)

Models with halogen headlights and bulb type parking lights

Front Turn Signal/Side Marker/Parking Light Bulbs: 28/8 W (Amber)

Turn the steering wheel and pull the inner fender back in the same way as when replacing the front side marker light bulbs*.

➡ **Front Side Marker Light Bulbs** P. 532



1. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights*

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

Brake Light, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker/Taillight Bulbs

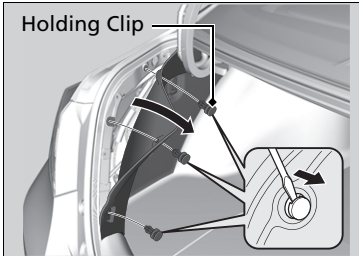
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Models with LED type brake lights

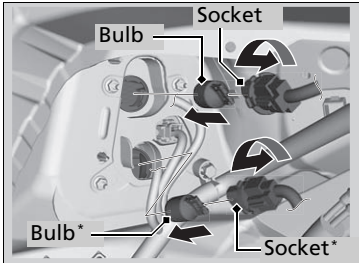
Brake Light: LED
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)
Rear Side Marker/Taillight: LED

Models with bulb type brake lights

Brake Light: 21 W
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)
Rear Side Marker/Taillight: LED



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.



2. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

* Not available on all models

Brake Light, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker/Taillight Bulbs

Models with LED type brake lights

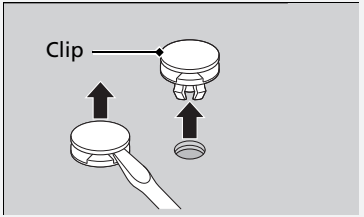
Brake and rear side marker/taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Models with bulb type brake lights

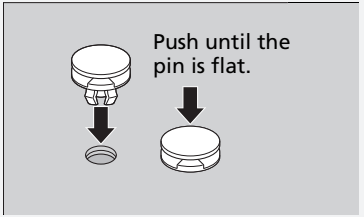
Rear side marker/taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

All models

When removing the clip, insert a flat-tip screwdriver, then lift and remove the clip.



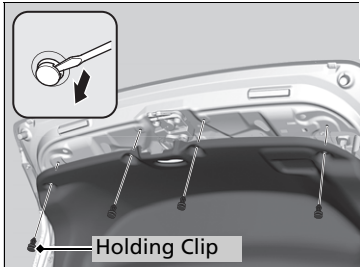
Insert the clip with the pin raised, and push until it is flat.



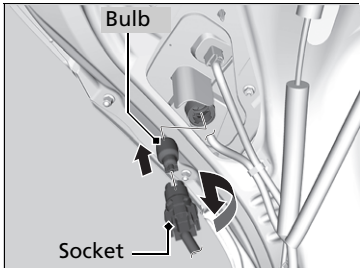
Taillights and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Back-Up Light: 16 W
Taillight: LED



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.
   Brake Light, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker/Taillight Bulbs P. 534



2. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

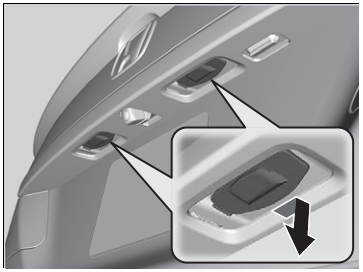
Taillights and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

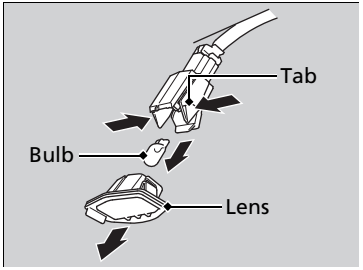
Rear License Plate Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Rear License Plate Light: 5 W



1. Remove the license plate light assembly by pushing the left edge of the lens toward the right and pulling the assembly out.



2. Remove the lens by pushing the tabs.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

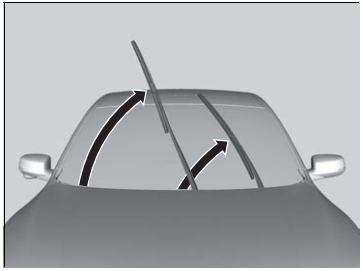
High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

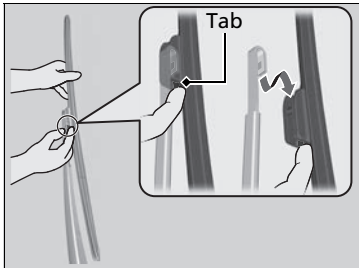
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.



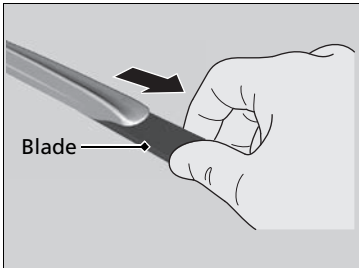
2. Press and hold the tab, then slide the blade from the wiper arm.

Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

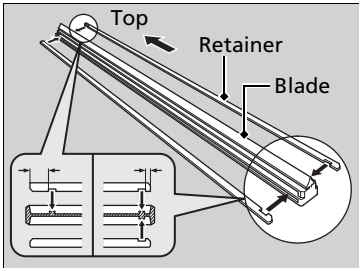
NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the windshield.

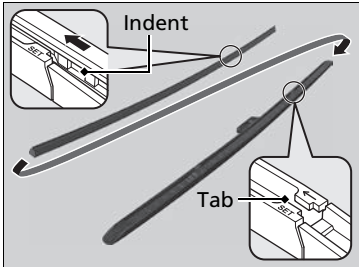
Continued



3. Slide the wiper blade out from its holder by pulling the tabbed end out.



4. Remove the retainers from the rubber blade that has been removed, and mount to a new rubber blade.
▶ Correctly align the rubber protrusion and the retainer grooves.



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
▶ The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
6. Slide the wiper blade onto the wiper arm, then push down the lock tab.
7. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specification's page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires, including the spare. Even tires in good condition can lose 1 to 2 psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm^2) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 544
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Checking Tires

⚠WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm^2) higher than if checked when cold.

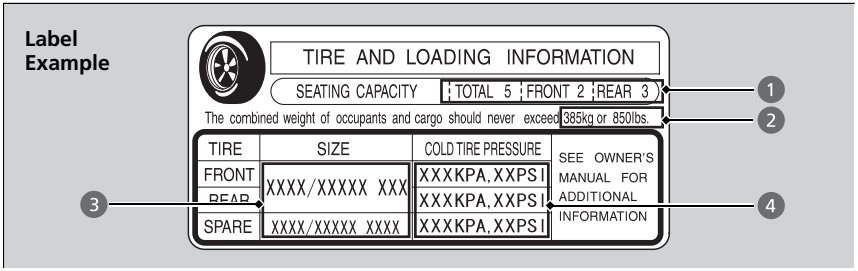
Whenever tire pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.
➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 475

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

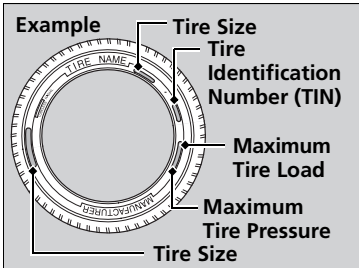
Check the spare tire pressure once a month or before long trips.

Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver's doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.



Tire Labeling



The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.

Tire and Loading Information Label

The tire and loading information label attached to the driver's doorjamb contains:

1. The number of people your vehicle can carry.
2. The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
3. The original tire sizes for front, rear, and spare.
4. The proper cold tire pressure for front, rear, and spare.

Tire Sizes

Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

215/55R17 94V

215: Tire width in millimeters.
55: Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).
R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).
17: Rim diameter in inches.
94: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).
V: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the example in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

Cold Tire Pressure – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).
Load Rating – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.
Maximum Inflation Pressure – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.
Maximum Load Rating – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.
Recommended Inflation Pressure – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.
Treadwear Indicators (TWI) – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

DOT B97R FW6X 2209
DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
B97R: Manufacturer's identification mark.
FW6X: Tire type code.
22 09: Date of manufacture.

Year
Week

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For example:
Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

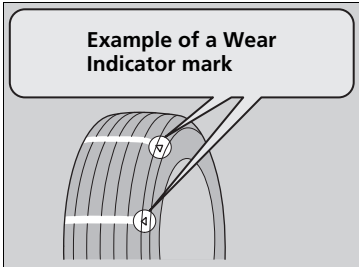
Traction

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire. **Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Checking Tires

Models with 215/55R17 tires
Models with 235/40R19 tires

High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 99 mph or 160 km/h), adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tire failure.

Models with 215/55R17 tires

Tire Size	215/55R17 94V
Pressure	Front: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm^2) Rear: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm^2)

Models with 235/40R19 tires

Tire Size	235/40R19 96V
Pressure	Front: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm^2) Rear: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm^2)

Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the ABS and VSA® (vehicle stability assist) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tire and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

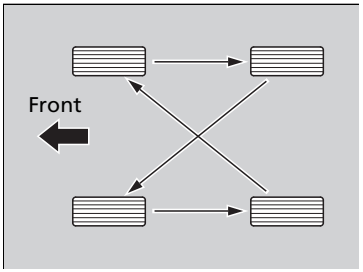
Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Tire Rotation

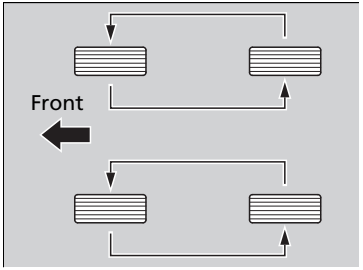
Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the information display*/ multi-information display* helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

■ Tires without rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

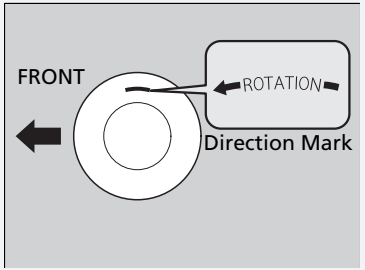
■ Tires with rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

Tire Rotation

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



Whenever tires are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

➔ **TPMS Calibration** P. 475

* Not available on all models

Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked **M+S** tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tires:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:
- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Models with 205/65R16 tires

Cable-type: SCC Radial Chain SC1034

Models with 215/55R17 tires

Cable-type: SCC Radial Chain SC1036

Models with 235/40R19 tires

Cable-type: SCC Radial Chain SC1040

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Winter Tires

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

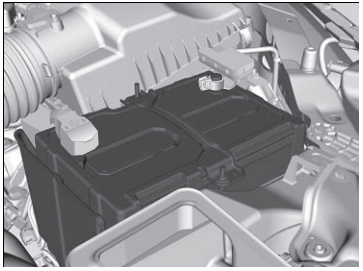
NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the Battery



Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

The battery condition is being monitored by the sensor on the negative terminal. If there is a problem with the sensor, the warning message on the information display*/multi-information display* will let you know. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
  Reactivating the audio system P. 189
- The clock resets.
  Clock P. 114
- The navigation system* is disabled.
  Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Battery

WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

WARNING: Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.
Wash your hands after handling.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

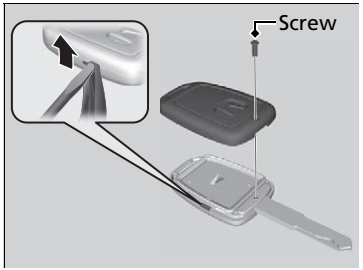
When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Please consult a dealer for more information.

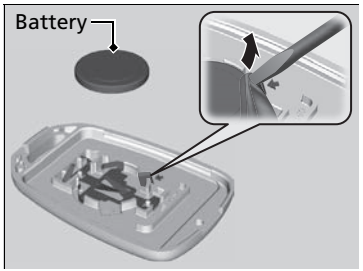
* Not available on all models

Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

Master Keys with Remote Transmitter*





Battery type: CR1620

1. Unscrew the cover with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.
2. Open the remote transmitter.
   ▶ Wrap the small flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the transmitter.
3. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
4. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

Replacing the Button Battery

NOTICE

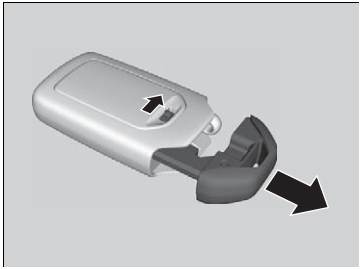
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

* Not available on all models

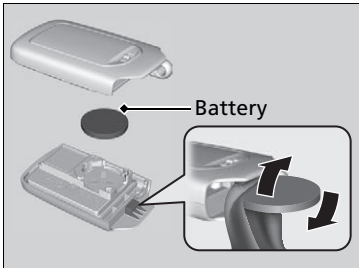
Continued

Smart Entry Remote*



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
- ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
- ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the smart entry remote.

3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

* Not available on all models

Dust and Pollen Filter

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

Dust and Pollen Filter

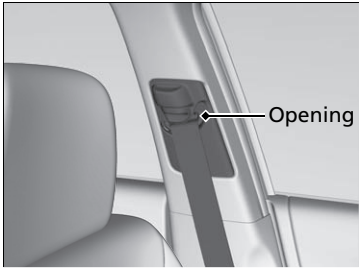
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact a dealer for replacement.

Interior Care

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.
Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.
Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

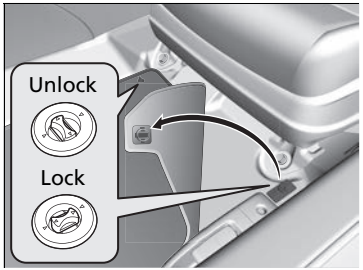
Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Floor Mats



The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay close attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a 90% water and 10% neutral soap solution. Then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.
Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.
Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

Using an Automated Car Wash

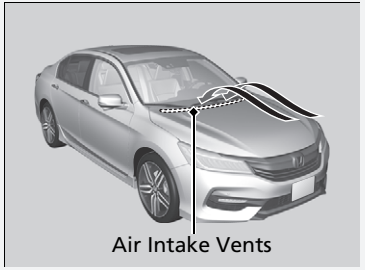
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- Turn off the automatic intermittent wipers*.

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior. Do not spray water into the engine compartment.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



* Not available on all models

Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining Aluminum Wheels

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. Use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away promptly.
Be careful not to use harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush. They can damage the clear coat of the aluminum alloy wheels that helps keep the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing.

Continued

Applying Wax

NOTICE
Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

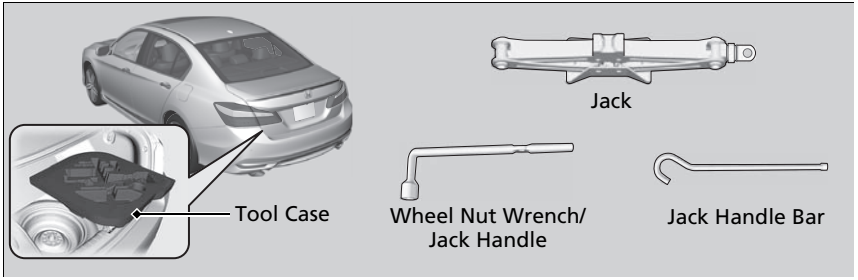
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools
Types of Tools 558
If a Tire Goes Flat
Changing a Flat Tire 559
Engine Does Not Start
Checking the Engine 565
If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak 566
Emergency Engine Stop 567
Jump Starting 568
Shift Lever Does Not Move 571
Overheating
How to Handle Overheating 572
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking
If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On 574
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On 574
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 575
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On 576
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 576
If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks 577
Fuses
Fuse Locations 578
Inspecting and Changing Fuses 581
Emergency Towing 582

Types of Tools



Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the trunk.

Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tire with a compact spare tire. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tire repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery surface, and apply the parking brake.

Automatic transmission/CVT models

2. Move the shift lever to P.

Manual transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to R.

All models

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Changing a Flat Tire

Follow these compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tire pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm^2)

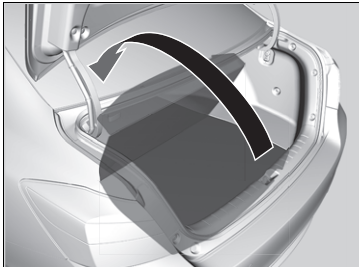
When driving with the compact spare tire, keep the vehicle speed under 50 mph (80 km/h). Replace with a full-size tire as soon as possible.

The compact spare tire and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tire or wheel with your vehicle.

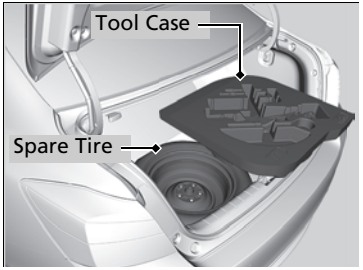
Do not mount tire chains on a compact spare tire.
If a chain-mounted front tire goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tires and replace it with the compact spare tire. Remove the flat front tire and replace it with the full-size tire that was removed from the rear. Mount the tire chains on the front tire.

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly.
Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tire

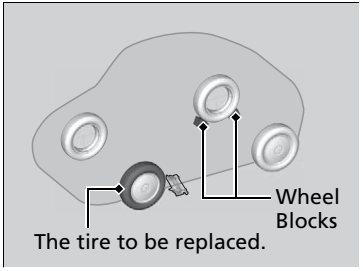


1. Open the trunk floor lid.

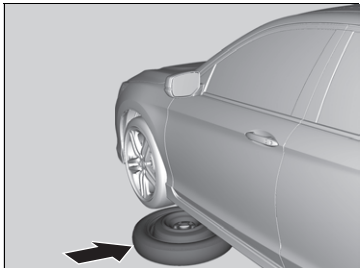


2. Take the tool case out of the trunk. Take the jack and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.

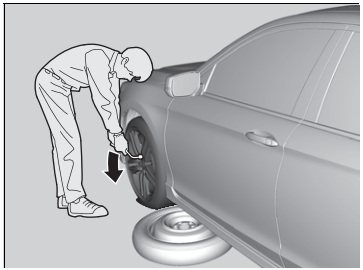
3. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tire.



4. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tire.



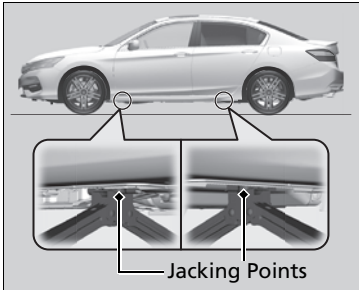
5. Place the compact spare tire (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tire that needs to be replaced.



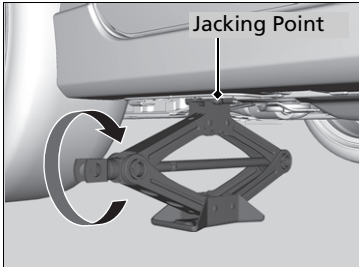
6. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

Continued

How to Set Up the Jack

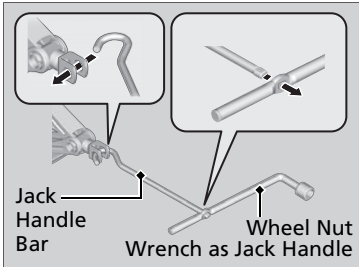


1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.



2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

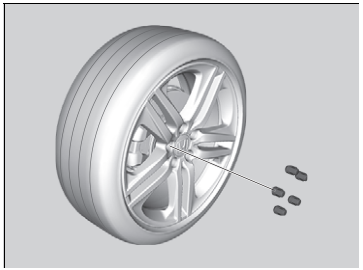
Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

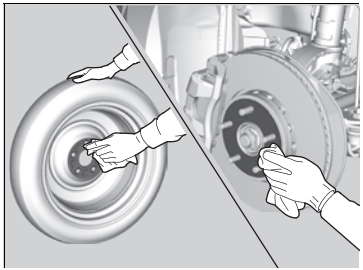
Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight (“load”) or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

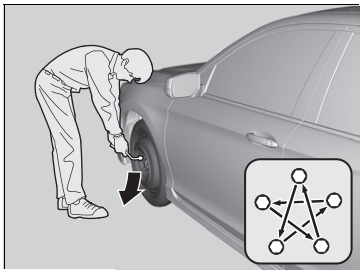
Replacing the Flat Tire



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tire.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the compact spare tire.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



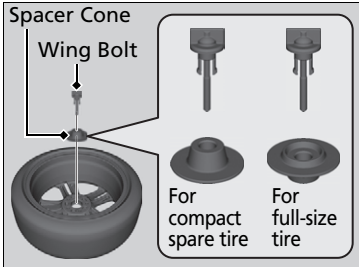
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.
Wheel nut torque:
80 lbf·ft (108 N·m, 11 kgf·m)

Continued

Replacing the Flat Tire

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Storing the Flat Tire



1. Remove the center cap.
2. Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.
3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tire with the wing bolt.
4. Securely put the jack and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case. Store the case in the trunk.

Storing the Flat Tire

⚠WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

TPMS and the Spare Tire

If you replace a flat tire with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few miles (kilometers), the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on. **Tire Pressures Low** appears on the multi-information display*, but this is normal.

Calibrate the TPMS when you replace the tire with a specified regular tire.

TPMS Calibration P. 475

* Not available on all models

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle to jump start it.
Jump Starting P. 568

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	Models with multi-information display Models with smart entry system **Check for a message on the multi-information display.** • If the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 566 ▶Make sure the smart entry remote is in its operating range. **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 140
	Check brightness of the interior lights. Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness. • If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all **Battery** P. 548 • If the interior lights come on normally **Fuses** P. 578
The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Review the engine start procedure.** Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. **Starting the Engine** P. 421, 423
	Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. **Immobilizer System** P. 132
	Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. **Fuel Gauge** P. 95
	Check the fuse. Check all fuses, or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 581
	If the problem continues: **Emergency Towing** P. 582

Models with smart entry system

If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak

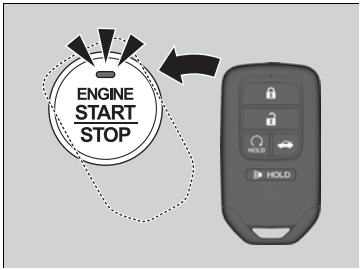
If the beeper sounds, the indicator on the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start.

Models with multi-information display

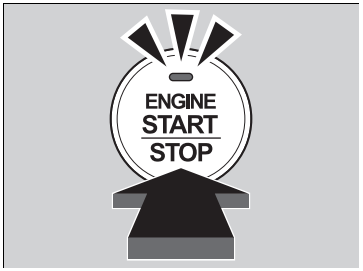
The **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the multi-information display.

All models

Start the engine as follows.



1. Touch the center of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the smart entry remote while the indicator on the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the smart entry remote should be facing you.
   ▶ The indicator flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the indicator stays on.
   ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Models with smart entry system

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place. With manual transmission models you can also downshift the transmission to utilize engine braking.

U.S. automatic transmission/CVT models

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, move the shift lever to P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Canadian automatic transmission/CVT models

Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

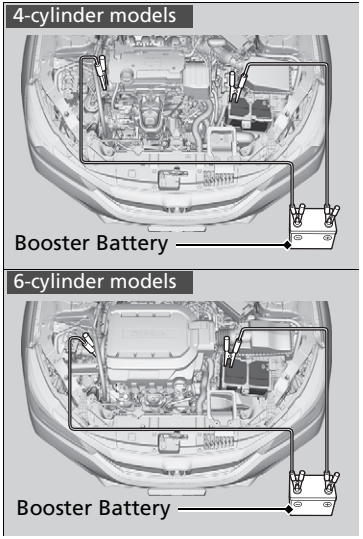
The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be switched off.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the hood.



1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
   - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
   - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

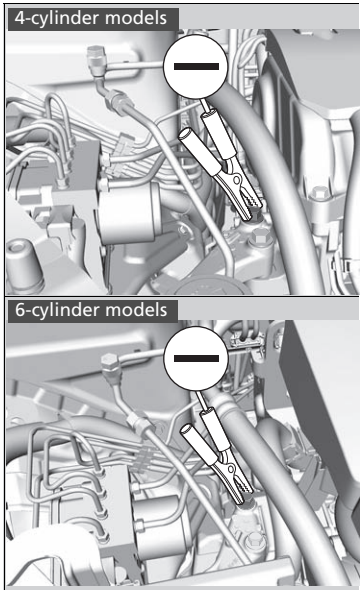
Jump Starting

⚠WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.

5. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.

6. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

Jump Starting

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

Continued

What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

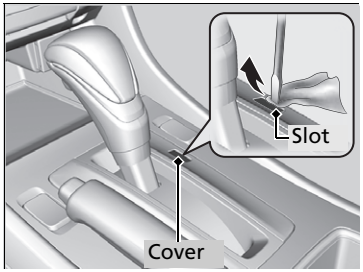
1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

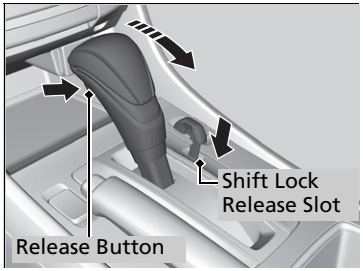
Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

Automatic transmission/CVT models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

Releasing the Lock





1. Set the parking brake.

Models without smart entry system

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

2. Remove the built-in key from the smart entry remote.

All models

3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.

5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button and place the shift lever into N.

▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge needle is at the H mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
   - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the hood.
   - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the hood.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

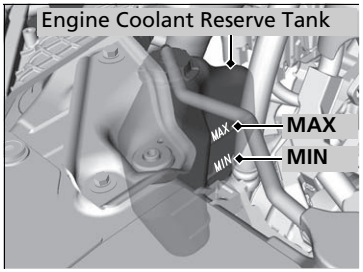
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge needle at the H mark may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge needle comes down.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the engine coolant reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge needle has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the indicator comes on**

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minute.

2. Open the hood and check the oil level.

▶ Add oil as necessary.

3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.

▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.

▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Turn off the climate control system, rear defogger, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system, or the fuel fill cap is missing, or loose.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

■ Check/Tighten Fuel Cap Message

■ **The message appears on when:**

An evaporative system leak is detected. This may be caused by the fuel fill cap being loose or not being installed.

■ **What to do when the message appears:**

1. Stop the engine.
2. Check if the fuel fill cap is fully installed.
▶ If not, loosen the cap, and then retighten it until it clicks at least once.
3. Drive for several days of normal driving.
▶ The message should go off.

■ **When the malfunction indicator lamp comes on**

The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if the system continues to detect a leak of gasoline vapor. If this happens, check the fuel fill cap using the procedures described above.

▶▶If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 31 mph (50 km/h) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

U.S.

Canada

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Press the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tire pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS or the compact spare tire is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after the tire pressure is adjusted.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tire causes the indicator to blink, change the tire to a full-size tire. The indicator goes off after driving for a few miles (kilometers).

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after a full-size tire is reinstalled.

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

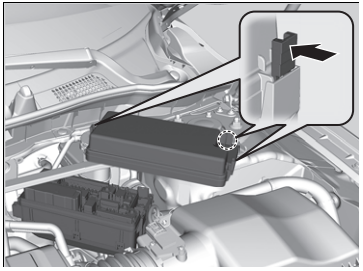
Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *1 and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Located near the brake fluid reservoir. Push the tabs to open the box.
Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Battery	125 A
2	EPS	70 A
	Fuse Box Main 1	(60 A)
	Fuse Box Option 1	(40 A)
	–	–
	–	–
	ABS/VSA FSR	20 A*2 40 A*3
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A*2 30 A*3
3	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
4	Front Fog Light*	(10 A)
5	Horn	10 A
6	Stop Light	10 A
7	FI Sub	15 A
8	DRL	(7.5 A)
9	IG Coil	15 A
10	Injector*4 –*5	(20 A)*4 –*5

*2:Models with LKAS
*3:Models without LKAS
*4:4-cylinder models
*5:6-cylinder models

	Circuit Protected	Amps
11	Hazard	15 A
12	Fuse Box Main 2	60 A
	Fuse Box Option 2	(40 A)
	IG Main 1	30 A*6 50 A*7
	IG Main 2*6 –*7	30 A*6 –*7
	Sub Fan Motor	20 A*4 30 A*5
	Headlight Low Beam Main	30 A
	Fuse Box	30 A
	Wiper Motor	30 A
	Main Fan Motor	30 A
	Starter Motor*6 –*7	30 A*6 –*7
13	Rear Defogger	40 A
14	Heater Motor	40 A
15	FI Main	15 A
16	Heated Door Mirror*, *4 –*5	(10 A)*4 –*5
17	MG Clutch	7.5 A
18	DBW	15 A
19	Small Light	20 A
20	Interior Light	7.5 A

*6:Models with smart entry system
*7:Models without smart entry system

* Not available on all models

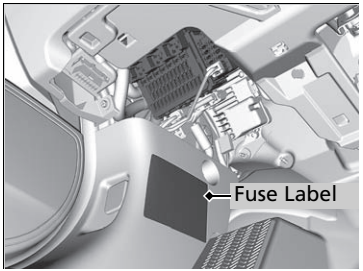
	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Back Up	10 A
22	Audio	10 A
23	Fan Timer	7.5 A
24	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
25	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
26	ABS/VSA ECU*2 –*3	7.5 A*2 –*3

*2:Models with LKAS
*3:Models without LKAS

Continued

Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.



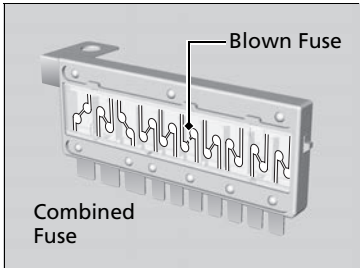
Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

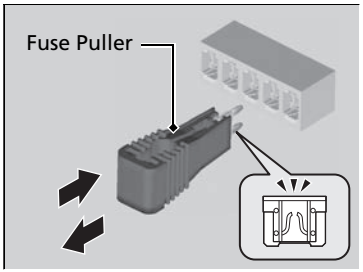
Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	A/C	7.5 A
2	DRL	7.5 A
3	–	–
4	–	–
5	Meter	7.5 A
6	SRS	7.5 A
7	Option	(7.5 A)
8	MISS SOL	10 A
9	Fuel Pump	20 A
10	ABS/VSA	7.5 A
11	–	–
12	Front Wiper	7.5 A
13	ACG	15 A
14	Rear Accessory Power Socket (Console Compartment)	(20 A)
15	Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
16	Moonroof*	(20 A)
17	Front Seat Heaters*	(20 A)
18	–	–
19	Passenger Side Door Unlock	10 A
20	Driver Side Rear Door Unlock	10 A
21	Driver's Door Lock	10 A
22	Passenger Side Door Lock	10 A
23	Driver's Door Unlock	10 A
24	SRS	10 A
25	Illumination	10 A
26	Key Lock	7.5 A
27	Parking Lights	10 A
28	Lumbar Support*	(10 A)
29	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	Washer	15 A
31	SMART*	(10 A)
32	Driver's Power Window	20 A
33	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
34	Rear Driver Side Power Window	20 A
35	Rear Passenger Side Power Window	20 A
36	Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
37	ACCESSORY	7.5 A
38	–	–
39	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
40	Front Accessory Power Socket (Console Panel)	20 A
41	Driver Side Rear Door Lock	10 A
42	Door Lock	20 A
a	Audio*	(7.5 A)
b	ACM*	(20 A)
c	Rear Seat Heaters*	(15 A)
d	Premium Amp*	(20 A)
e	–	–
f	–	–
g	Passenger's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
h	Passenger's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)

* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses





1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.
Confirm the specified amperage using the charts on P. 578 to 580.

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

NOTICE
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain.
It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications 584
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number 588
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 589
Reporting Safety Defects 590
Emissions Testing
Testing of Readiness Codes..... 591
Warranty Coverages 593
Authorized Manuals..... 595
Customer Service Information..... 596

4-cylinder models

Vehicle Specifications

Model	Honda Accord Sedan
No. of Passengers:	
Front	2
Rear	3
Total	5
Weights:	
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	U.S.: 4,200 lbs (1,905 kg)*1 4,321 lbs (1,960 kg)*2 Canada: 1,930 kg*1 1,980 kg*2
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)	U.S.: 2,249 lbs (1,020 kg)*1 2,315 lbs (1,050 kg)*2 Canada: 1,030 kg*1 1,065 kg*2
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)	U.S.: 2,006 lbs (910 kg)*1 2,050 lbs (930 kg)*2 Canada: 910 kg*1 930 kg*2
Air Conditioning:	
Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	15.0 – 16.8 oz (425 – 475 g)
Lubricant Type	ND-OIL 8

*1: LX models
*2: Except LX models

Engine Specifications

Displacement	144 cu-in (2,356 cm³)	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILKAR7G11GS DILKAR7H11GS
	DENSO	DXE22HQR-D11S

Fuel

Fuel: Type	Unleaded gasoline, Pump octane number of 87 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	17.2 US gal (65 ℓ)

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	U.S.: 2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ) Canada: 4.85 ℓ

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)		55W (H11)*3 LED*4
Headlights (High Beam)		60W (HB3)*3 LED*4
Fog Lights*		LED
Front Turn Signal/Side Marker/Parking Lights*3, *5 Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Lights*3, *6		28/8W (Amber)
Parking/Daytime Running Lights*6		LED
Front Turn Signal Lights*4		LED
Front Side Marker Lights*4		3CP
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*		LED
Brake Lights		21W*7 LED*8
Rear Turn Signal Lights		21W (Amber)
Rear Side Marker Lights		LED
Taillights (on Fenders)		LED
Back-Up Lights		16W
Taillights (on Trunk Lid)		LED
High-Mount Brake Light		LED
Rear License Plate Lights		5W
Trunk Light		5W
Interior Lights		
	Map Lights	8W
	Ceiling Light	8W
	Vanity Mirror Lights	1.4W
	Courtesy Lights*	2CP

*3: Models with halogen headlights
*4: Models with LED headlights
*5: Models with bulb type parking lights
*6: Models with LED type parking/daytime running lights
*7: Models with bulb type brake lights
*8: Models with LED type brake lights

* Not available on all models

■ Brake/Clutch Fluid

Specified	Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified	HCF-2	
Capacity	Change	3.9 US qt (3.7 ℓ)

■ Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda Manual Transmission Fluid	
Capacity	Change	2.0 US qt (1.9 ℓ)

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	·Genuine Honda Motor Oil 0W-20 ·API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil	
Capacity	Change	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)
	Change including filter	4.4 US qt (4.2 ℓ)

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	1.66 US gal (6.28 ℓ)*1 1.66 US gal (6.30 ℓ) *2 (change including the remaining 0.17 US gal (0.64 ℓ) in the reserve tank)

*1: Continuously variable transmission (CVT) models
*2: Manual transmission models

■ Tire

Regular	Size	205/65R16 95H*3 215/55R17 94V*4 235/40R19 96V*5
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm²])	
	Front	33 (230 [2.3])*3, *5 33 (225 [2.3])*4
	Rear	32 (220 [2.2])*3, *5 33 (225 [2.3])*4
Compact Spare	Size	T135/90D16 102M*3, *4 T135/80D17 103M*5
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm²])	60 (420 [4.2])
Wheel Size	Regular	16 x 7J*3 17 x 7 1/2J*4 19 x 8J*5
	Compact Spare	16 x 4T*3, *4 17 x 4T*5

*3: U.S. LX models
*4: U.S. EX, EX-L models and Canadian LX, EX-L models
*5: U.S. Sport models and Canadian Sport, Touring models

Continued

6-cylinder models

■Vehicle Specifications

Model	Honda Accord Sedan
No. of Passengers:	
Front	2
Rear	3
Total	5
Weights:	
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	U.S.: 4,542 lbs (2,060 kg) Canada: 2,060 kg
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)	U.S.: 2,491 lbs (1,130 kg) Canada: 1,130 kg
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)	U.S.: 2,072 lbs (940 kg) Canada: 940 kg
Air Conditioning:	
Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	15.0 – 16.8 oz (425 – 475 g)
Lubricant Type	ND-OIL 8

■Engine Specifications

Displacement	212 cu-in (3,471 cm³)	
Spark Plugs	NGK	ILZKR7B11
	DENSO	SXU22HCR11

■Fuel

Fuel: Type	Unleaded gasoline, Pump octane number of 87 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	17.2 US gal (65 ℓ)

■Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	U.S.: 2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ) Canada: 4.85 ℓ

■Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)		55W (H11)*1 LED*2
Headlights (High Beam)		60W (HB3)*1 LED*2
Fog Lights		LED
Front Turn Signal/Side Marker/Parking Lights*1, *3 Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Lights*1, *4		28/8W (Amber)
Parking/Daytime Running Lights*4		LED
Front Turn Signal Lights*2		LED
Front Side Marker Lights*2		3CP
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)		LED
Brake Lights		21W*5 LED*6
Rear Turn Signal Lights		21W (Amber)
Rear Side Marker Lights		LED
Taillights (on Fenders)		LED
Back-Up Lights		16W
Taillights (on Trunk Lid)		LED
High-Mount Brake Light		LED
Rear License Plate Lights		5W
Trunk Light		5W
Interior Lights		
	Map Lights	8W
	Ceiling Light	8W
	Vanity Mirror Lights	1.4W
	Courtesy Lights	2CP

*1: Models with halogen headlights
*2: Models with LED headlights
*3: Models with bulb type parking lights
*4: Models with LED type parking/daytime running lights
*5: Models with bulb type brake lights
*6: Models with LED type brake lights

■Brake Fluid

Specified	Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

■Automatic Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid)	
Capacity	Change	3.3 US qt (3.1 ℓ)

■Engine Oil

Recommended	·Genuine Honda Motor Oil 0W-20 ·API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil	
Capacity	Change	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)
	Change including filter	4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

■Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	1.72 US gal (6.5 ℓ) (change including the remaining 0.17 US gal (0.64 ℓ) in the reserve tank)

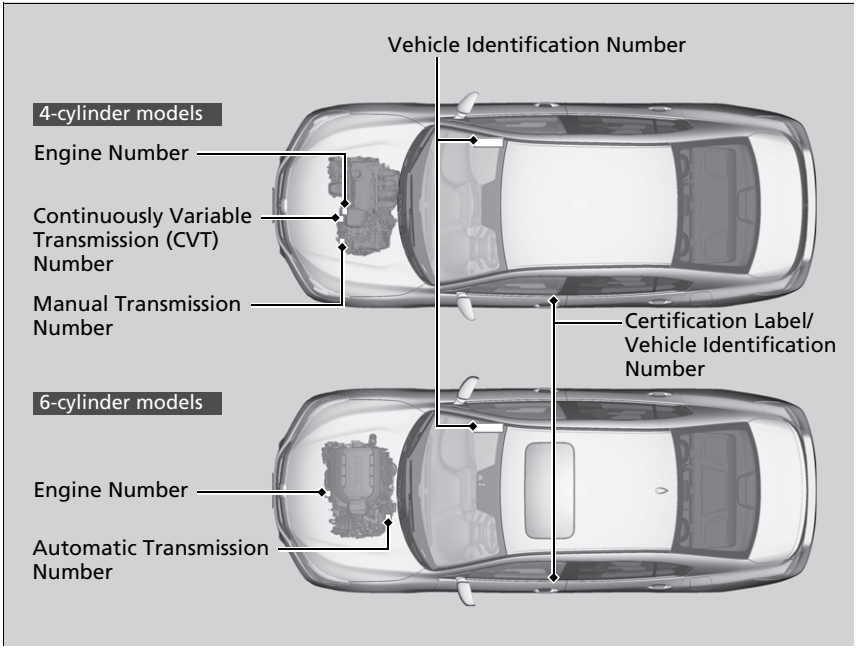
■Tire

Regular	Size	215/55R17 94V*1 235/40R19 96V*2
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm²]) Front	33 (225 [2.3])*1 33 (230 [2.3])*2
	Rear	33 (225 [2.3])*1 32 (220 [2.2])*2
Compact Spare	Size	T135/90D16 102M*1 T135/80D17 103M*2
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm²])	60 (420 [4.2])
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7 1/2J*1 19 x 8J*2
	Compact Spare	16 x 4T*1 17 x 4T*2

*1: EX-L V6 models
*2: U.S. Touring models and Canadian V6 Touring models

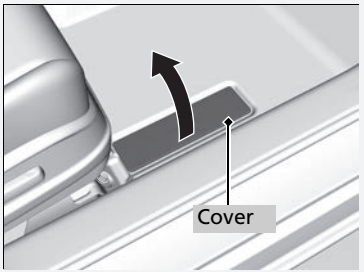
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.



Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Audio System
Bluetooth® Audio
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver
Immobilizer System
Keyless Access System*
Remote Transmitter
Wireless Charger*

Each of the above complies with the appropriate requirements or the required standards of FCC (Federal Communications Commission) and Industry Canada Standard, described below:

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-Gen/210/251/310. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

* Not available on all models

In the U.S.
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

In Canada
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada's Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to *http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety*.

Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle has "Readiness Codes," as part of the onboard self diagnostic system. Some States use these codes as a test to see if your vehicle's emissions components are working properly.
The codes may not be read properly if testing is performed just after the battery has gone dead or been disconnected.

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to ON II *1, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for several seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested before the readiness codes are ready, prepare the vehicle for retesting by doing the following:

1. Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
2. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for six hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
4. Start the engine without touching the accelerator pedal, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in P (automatic transmission/CVT) or N (manual transmission). Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there for about three minutes.
6. Let the engine idle with your foot off the accelerator for 20 seconds.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Testing of Readiness Codes

The readiness codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.

7. Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D (automatic/CVT) or 5th (manual). Do not use cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
8. Drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
9. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 30 minutes.

■ U.S. Owners

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty – these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty – all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

Accessory Limited Warranty – Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty – covers all Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Continued

Replacement Battery Limited Warranty – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from a dealer.

Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

■ Canadian Owners

Please refer to the warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

■ Service Express

For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit *www.techinfo.honda.com* for pricing and options.

■ For U.S. Owners:

Manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at (800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at *www.helminc.com*.

■ For Canadian Owners:

Please contact a dealer to order any manuals that you may require.

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals.

They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's service manager or general manager. If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact Honda Customer Services.

U.S. Owners:
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Honda Automobile Customer Services
Mail Stop 500-2N-7A
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746
Tel: (800) 999-1009

Canadian Owners:
Honda Canada Inc.
Customer Relations
180 Honda Boulevard
Markham, ON
L6C 0H9
Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9
Fax: 1-877-939-0909
E-mail: Honda_cr@ch.honda.com

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816
Tel: (787) 620-7546

Customer Service Information

When you call or write, please give us the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number
  Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number P. 588
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

Gracenote Music Recognition Service (CDDB)

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®.
Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery.
For more information, visit *www.gracenote.com.*
When music is recorded to the HDD from a CD, information such as the recording artist and track name are retrieved from the Gracenote Database and displayed (when available).
Gracenote may not contain information for all albums.
Gracenote is an internet-based music recognition service that allows artist, album, and track information from CDs to display on the HDD.
Gracenote users are allowed 4 free updates a year. More information about Gracenote, its features, and downloads are available at *www.honda.com* (in U.S.) or *www.honda.ca* (in Canada).
CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote.
One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents.
Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote® END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music- related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions or this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only.

You agree not to assign, copy, transfer, or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party.

YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Continued

Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS."

Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted.

Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NONINFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.
© Gracenote 2009

Disclaimer of Pandora®

Requirements to access Pandora®

- Latest version of the Pandora application installed on your mobile device. (Visit the Apple iTunes store or Google Play Marketplace to download the latest version.)
- Registered Pandora account (you can create a free account at *www.pandora.com <http://www.pandora.com/>* or on your smartphone)
- Connection to the internet via WiFi or cellular data network.
- Android devices must be connected to the vehicle via *Bluetooth*, iPhone devices may be connected via *Bluetooth* or USB.

Limitations

- Access to Pandora requires an active internet connection
- Ability to access Pandora through this system is subject to change without notice
- Certain functionality of Pandora service is not available when accessing the service through this system including, but not limited to, creating new stations, deleting stations, emailing current stations, buying songs, viewing additional text information, logging in to Pandora, and adjusting Cell Network Audio Quality. Pandora internet radio is a music service not affiliated with HONDA. More information is available at *http://www.pandora.com <http://www.pandora.com/>*. Pandora, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission.
- Mobile access requires a smartphone with an active data plan. Standard data rates may apply.
- Pandora is only available in the United States.

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 434
Operation 435

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)..... 481
Accessories and Modifications..... 500
Accessory Power Sockets..... 173
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 82, 447
Additives
Coolant 523
Engine Oil..... 517
Washer..... 528
Additives, Engine Oil 517
Adjusting
Armrest 167
Clock..... 114
Front Seats 160
Head Restraints..... 163
Mirrors 158
Rear Seats..... 166
Steering Wheel 157
Temperature..... 98, 102
Aha™ 264
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 180
Changing the Mode 180
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 181
Dust and Pollen Filter 551
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 180
Sensor..... 183
Synchronized Mode..... 182
Using Automatic Climate Control 180
Air Pressure..... 540, 585, 587
Airbags..... 39
Advanced Airbags 45
After a Collision 42
Airbag Care..... 51
Event Data Recorder..... 0
Front Airbags (SRS)..... 42
Indicator..... 49, 72
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 50
Sensors 39
Side Airbags..... 46
Side Curtain Airbags..... 48
AM/FM Radio..... 199, 239
Android Auto 281
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 481
Indicator..... 72
Apple CarPlay 277
Armrest 167
Audio Remote Controls 190
Audio System..... 186
Adjusting the Sound..... 197, 232
Audio/Information Screen..... 193, 216
Audio/Information Touch Screen 218
Auxiliary Input Jack..... 188
Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout 221
Closing Apps..... 231
Display Setup 198, 233
Error Messages 286
General Information..... 291
Home Screen 224
Internet Radio 207, 262, 264
iPod 204, 255, 294
Limitations for Manual Operation 234, 344, 377
MP3/WMA/AAC 201, 210, 252, 265
Playing a CD 201, 252
Recommended CDs 292
Recommended Devices 294
Remote Controls..... 190
Security Code 189
Selecting an Audio Source 234
Status Area 230
Theft Protection 189
USB Flash Drives..... 210, 265, 294
USB Port(s)..... 187
Wallpaper Setup 195, 222
Audio/Information Screen..... 193, 216
Audio/Information Touch Screen..... 218
Authorized Manuals 595
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 127
Customize 109, 309, 332
Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)..... 147
Indicator 80
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 152
Automatic Lighting..... 145

Automatic Transmission
Creeping 429
Fluid 526
Kickdown 429
Operating the Shift Lever 20, 437
Shift Lever Does Not Move 571
Shifting 436
Auxiliary Input Jack 188
Average Fuel Economy 97, 101
Average Speed 102

B

Battery 548
Charging System Indicator 69, 574
Jump Starting 568
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 548
Maintenance (Replacing) 549
Belts (Seat) 32
Beverage Holders 172
Bluetooth® Audio 213, 268
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® 343, 374
Booster Seats (For Children) 63
Brake System 479
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 481
Brake Assist System 482
Fluid 527
Foot Brake 480
Indicator 68, 576
Parking Brake 479
Brake System Indicator (Amber) 68
Brake System Indicator (Red) 68
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 153
Bulb Replacement 529
Brake Lights, Rear Turn Signal Lights and Rear Side Marker/Taillights 534
Fog Lights 531
Front Side Marker Lights 532
Front Turn Signal Lights 531
Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Lights 533
Front Turn Signal/Side Marker/Parking Lights 533
Headlights 529
High-Mount Brake Light 536
Parking/Daytime Running Lights 531
Rear License Plate Lights 536
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights 533
Taillights and Back-Up Lights 535
Bulb Specifications 584, 586

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 64
Cargo Hooks 176
Carrying Cargo 413, 415
CD Player 201, 252
Center Pocket 171
Certification Label 588
Changing Bulbs 529
Charging System Indicator 69, 574
Child Safety 52
Childproof Door Locks 126
Emergency Trunk Opener 131
Child Seat 52
Booster Seats 63
Child Seat for Infants 54
Child Seat for Small Children 55
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 59
Larger Children 62
Rear-facing Child Seat 54
Selecting a Child Seat 56
Using a Tether 61
Childproof Door Locks 126
Cleaning the Exterior 554
Cleaning the Interior 552
Climate Control System 180
Changing the Mode 180
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 181
Dust and Pollen Filter 551
Recirculation and Fresh Air Mode 180
Sensors 183
Synchronized Mode 182
Using Automatic Climate Control 180
Clock 114
Clutch Fluid 527
CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™) 483

Coat Hook 176
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 483
Compact Spare Tire 559, 585, 587
Compass 409
Console Compartment 170
Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)
Creeping 429
Fluid 525
Kickdown 429
Operating the Shift Lever 19, 431, 433
Shift Lever Does Not Move 571
Shifting 430, 432
Controls 113
Coolant (Engine) 523
Adding to the Engine Coolant Reserve Tank 523
Adding to the Radiator 524
Overheating 572
Creeping (Automatic Transmission /CVT) 429
Cruise Control 442
Indicator 78
Cup Holders 172
Customer Service Information 596
Customized Features 103, 298, 316

D

Daytime Running Lights 150
Dead Battery 568
Defaulting All the Settings 315, 339
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 181
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 589
Dimming
Headlights 144
Rearview Mirror 158
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 518
Directional Signals (Turn Signal) 144
Display Button 193, 216
Door Mirrors 159
Doors 116
Auto Door Locking 127
Auto Door Unlocking 127
Door and Trunk Open Indicator 31, 74
Keys 116
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 124
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 119
Lockout Prevention System 123
DOT Tire Quality Grading 542
Driving 411
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 447
Automatic Transmission/CVT 429
Braking 479
Cruise Control 442
Shifting Gear 436, 438
Shifting Position 430, 432
Starting the Engine 421, 423
Driving Position Memory System 155
Dust and Pollen Filter 551

E

Eco Assist System 9
ECON Button 441
Elapsed Time 101
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
Indicator 74, 576
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 471
Emergency 582
Emergency Engine Stop 567
Emergency Trunk Opener 131
Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes) 591
Engine 588
Coolant 523
Jump Starting 568
Oil 517
Remote Engine Start 425
Starting 421, 423
Switch Buzzer 139
Engine Coolant 523
Adding to the Engine Coolant Reserve Tank 523
Adding to the Radiator 524
Overheating 572
Temperature Gauge 95
Engine Oil 517
Adding 520
Checking 518
Displaying Oil Life 505, 509

Low Oil Pressure Indicator 69, 574
Recommended Engine Oil 517
ENGINE START/STOP Button 140
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 74, 576
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 64
Expanded View Driver's Mirror 159
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 554
Exterior Mirrors 159

F

Features 185
Filters
Dust and Pollen 551
Oil 521
Flat Tire 559
Floor Mats 553
Fluids
Automatic Transmission 526
Brake/Clutch 527
Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) 525
Engine Coolant 523
Manual Transmission 525
Windshield Washer 528
FM/AM Radio 199, 239
Fog Light Indicator 77
Folding Down the Rear Seat 166
Foot Brake 480
Front Airbags (SRS) 42
Front Seats
Adjusting 160
Front Sensor Camera 445
Fuel 21, 497
Economy 499
Gauge 95
Instant Fuel Economy 97, 102
Low Fuel Indicator 72
Range 98, 101
Recommendation 497
Refueling 497
Fuel Economy 499
Fuel Fill Cap 21, 498
Message 575
Fuel Fill Door 21, 498
Fuses 578
Inspecting and Changing 581
Locations 578, 580

G

Gasoline (Fuel)
Economy 499
Gauge 95
Information 497
Instant Fuel Economy 97, 102
Low Fuel Indicator 72
Refueling 497
Gauges 95
Gear Shift Lever Positions
Automatic Transmission 436
Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) 430, 432
Manual Transmission 439
Glass (care) 552, 555
Glove Box 170

H

Halogen Bulbs 529
Handling the Unexpected 557
HandsFreeLink® (HFL) 343, 374
Auto Answer 358
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History 360, 388
Automatic Transferring 358
Displaying Messages 403
Displaying Text Messages 371
HFL Buttons 343, 374
HFL Menus 345, 378
HFL Status Display 344, 376
In Case of Emergency 407
Limitations for Manual Operation 344, 377
Making a Call 364, 396
Options During a Call 369, 400
Phone Setup 350, 383
Phonebook Phonetic Modification 392
Receiving a Call 368, 399
Receiving a Text Message 370
Receiving a Text Message/E-mail 401

Ring Tone 359, 387
Selecting a Mail Account 402
Speed Dial 361, 389
To Create a Security PIN..... 357
To Set Up Text Message Options..... 355
To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options ... 386
Hazard Warning Button..... 4
HD Radio™..... 239
Head Restraints..... 163
Headlights..... 144
Aiming 529
Auto High-Beam..... 147
Automatic Operation..... 145
Dimming 144, 150
Operating..... 144
Heaters (Seat)..... 178, 179
High Beam Indicator..... 76
Hill Start Assist System..... 422, 427
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver..... 340
HondaLink®..... 270

I

Identification Numbers
Engine and Transmission..... 588
Vehicle Identification 588
Ignition Switch..... 139
Illumination Control
Knob 153
Immobilizer System 132
Indicator 77
Indicators 68
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Amber)..... 82
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (White)..... 82, 448
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)..... 72
Auto High-Beam (Amber)..... 80
Auto High-Beam (Green)..... 80
Brake System (Amber) 68
Brake System (Red)..... 68
Charging System 69, 574
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)..... 84
CRUISE CONTROL 78, 443
CRUISE MAIN 78, 442
Door and Trunk Open 74
ECON Mode..... 78, 441
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 74, 576
Fog Light..... 77
High Beam 76
Immobilizer System 77
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber)..... 83
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White)..... 83, 466
Light Control..... 79
Lights On 76
Low Fuel 72
Low Oil Pressure..... 69, 574
Low Tire Pressure/TPMS..... 75, 475, 477
Maintenance Minder 78, 505
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 69, 575
Parking Brake and Brake System 68, 576
Parking Sensor System 74
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM)..... 81
Seat Belt Reminder..... 33, 71
Security System Alarm..... 77
Smart Entry System 79
Starter System..... 79
Supplemental Restraint System 49, 72
System Message 76
Transmission 71
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning..... 76
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System 73, 471
VSA® OFF..... 73, 472
Washer Level 78
Information 583
Information Display..... 96
Instant Fuel Economy 97, 102
Instrument Panel..... 67
Brightness Control 153
Interior Lights..... 168
Interior Rearview Mirror 158
iPod..... 204, 255, 294

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)..... 562
Jump Starting..... 568

K

Key Number Tag 117
Keyless Lockout Prevention..... 123
Keys..... 116
Lockout Prevention 123
Master Keys 116
Number Tag..... 117
Rear Door Won't Open 126
Remote Engine Start 425
Remote Transmitter 121
Types and Functions..... 116
Valet Key 117, 130
Won't Turn 24
Kickdown (Automatic Transmission /CVT)..... 429

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 464
LaneWatch™ 473
Language (HFL) 344, 376
LATCH (Child Seats) 57
Lights 144, 529
Auto High-Beam 147
Automatic..... 145
Bulb Replacement 529
Daytime Running Lights 150
Fog Lights 146
High Beam Indicator 76
Interior..... 168
Light Switches 144
Lights On Indicator 76
Turn Signals..... 144
Load Limits..... 415
Locking/Unlocking 116
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 127
Childproof Door Locks 126
From Inside..... 124
From Outside..... 119
Keys 116
Using a Key 123
Lockout Prevention System..... 123
Low Battery Charge..... 574
Low Fuel Indicator 72
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 69, 574
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength 118
Lower Anchors..... 57
Lubricant Specifications Chart 584, 586
Luggage (Maximum Load Limit) 415

M

Maintenance..... 501
Battery 548
Brake/Clutch Fluid 527
Cleaning..... 552
Climate Control System 551
Coolant 523
Maintenance Minder™ 505
Oil..... 518
Precautions 502
Radiator 524
Remote Transmitter..... 549
Replacing Light Bulbs 529
Safety..... 503
Service Items 507, 511
Tires..... 539
Transmission Fluid 525
Under the Hood 513
Malfunction Indicator Lamp..... 69, 575
Manual Transmission 438
Map Lights 169
Maximum Load Limit 415
Meters, Gauges..... 95
Mirrors 158
Adjusting 158
Door 159
Exterior 159
Interior Rearview 158
Modifications (and Accessories) 500
Moonroof 138
MP3 ..... 201, 210, 252, 265
Multi-Information Display 99
Multi-View Rear Camera..... 496

N

Numbers (Identification)..... 588

O

Odometer 97, 101
Oil (Engine) 517
  Adding 520
  Checking 518
  Displaying Oil Life 505, 509
  Low Oil Pressure Indicator 69, 574
  Recommended Engine Oil 517
  Viscosity 517
Open Source Licences 297
Opening/Closing
  Hood 515
  Moonroof 138
  Power Windows 135
  Trunk 128
Outside Temperature Display 98, 102
Overheating 572

P

Paddle Shifters (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) 434
Pandora® 209, 262
Panic Mode 134
Parking 491
Parking Brake 479
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator 68, 576
Parking Sensor System 492
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 50
Passing Indicators 144
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 213, 268
Power Windows 135
Precautions While Driving
  Rain 428
Pregnant Women 37
Puncture (Tire) 559

R

Radiator 524
Radio (AM/FM) 199, 239
Radio (SiriusXM®) 244
Radio Data System (RDS) 200, 242
Range 98, 101
RDS (Radio Data System) 200, 242
Readiness Codes (Emissions Testing) 591
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button 154
Rear Seat (Folding Down) 166
Rear Seat Heaters 179
Rearview Mirror 158
Refueling 497
  Fuel Gauge 95
  Gasoline 497, 584, 586
  Low Fuel Indicator 72
Regulations 477, 542, 589
Remote Engine Start 425
Remote Transmitter 121
Replacement
  Battery 549
  Bulbs 529
  Fuses 578, 580
  Tires 545
  Wiper Blade Rubber 537
Reporting Safety Defects 590
Resetting a Trip Meter 97, 101
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) 460
  Indicator 81
  On and Off 461

S

Safe Driving 27
Safety Check 31
Safety Labels 65
Safety Message 1
Seat Belts 32
  Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor 36
  Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 34
  Checking 38
  Fastening 35
  Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 59
  Pregnant Women 37
  Reminder 33
  Warning Indicator 33, 71
Seat Heaters 178, 179
Seats 160
  Adjusting 160
  Front Seats 160
  Rear Seats 166
  Seat Heaters 178, 179

Security System 132
Immobilizer System Indicator 77
Security System Alarm Indicator 77
SEL/RESET Button 100
Select/Reset Knob 96
Selecting a Child Seat 56
Selector Knob (Audio) 192
Shift Lever 19, 430, 432, 436, 438
Operation 19, 431, 433, 437, 438
Releasing 571
Won't Move 571
Shift Lever Position Indicator 70, 431, 433, 437
Shifting (Transmission) 430, 432, 436, 438
Shoulder Anchor 36
Side Airbags 46
Side Curtain Airbags 48
Siri Eyes Free 285
SiriusXM® Radio 244
Smart Entry Remote 116, 425
Smart Entry with Push Button Start System 119
Snow Tires 547
Song By Voice™ (SBV) 258
Spare Tire 559, 585, 587
Spark Plugs 584, 586
Specifications 584
Specified Fuel 497, 584, 586
Speedometer 95
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 42
Starting the Engine 421, 423
Does Not Start 565
Engine Switch Buzzer 139
Jump Starting 568
Remote Engine Start 425
Steering Wheel
Adjusting 157
Stopping 491
Summer Tires 547
Sunglasses Holder 177
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 42
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) 4, 5, 139
SYNC Mode 182
System Message Indicator 76

T

Tachometer 95
Temperature
Outside Temperature Display 98, 102
Temperature Sensor 98, 102, 183
Time (Setting) 114
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 475
Indicator 75, 577
Tires 539
Air Pressure 540, 585, 587
Checking and Maintaining 539
Inspection 539
Labeling 540
Puncture (Flat Tire) 559
Regulations 542
Rotation 546
Spare Tire 559, 585, 587
Summer 547
Tire Chains 547
Wear Indicators 544
Winter 547
Tools 558
Towing a Trailer 417
Equipment and Accessories 418
Load Limits 417
Towing Your Vehicle 420
Emergency 582
TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) 475
Indicator 75, 577
Transmission 430, 432, 436, 438
Automatic 436
Continuously Variable (CVT) 430, 432
Fluid 525, 526
Manual 438
Number 588
Shift Lever Position Indicator 70, 431, 433, 437
Trip Meter 97, 101

Troubleshooting 557
Blown Fuse 578, 580
Brake Pedal Vibrates 25
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 25
Emergency Towing 582
Engine Won't Start 565
Noise When Braking 26
Overheating 572
Puncture/Flat Tire 559
Rear Door Won't Open 25, 126
Shift Lever Won't Move 571
Warning Indicators 68
Trunk 128
Lid 128
Light Bulb 584, 586
Main Switch 130
Turn Signals 144
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 76

U

Unlocking the Doors 119
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside 13
USB Flash Drives 210, 265, 294
USB Port(s) 187
Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System 119

V

Valet Key 117, 130
Vanity Mirrors 7
Vehicle Identification Number 588
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) 471
Off Button 472
Off Indicator 73
System Indicator 73
Ventilation 180
Viscosity (Oil) 517, 585, 587
Voice Control Operation 235
Audio Commands 237
Climate Control Commands 238
General Commands 238
Music Search Commands 238
On Screen Commands 238
Phone Commands 237
Useful Commands 237
Voice Portal Screen 236
Voice Recognition 235
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist) 471

W

Wallpaper 195, 222
Warning and Information Messages ... 85, 87
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 574
Warning Labels 65
Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately) 593
Watts 584, 586
Wear Indicators (Tire) 544
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) 562
Wi-Fi Connection 275
Window Washers 151
Adding/Refilling Fluid 528
Switch 151
Windows (Opening and Closing) 135
Windshield 151
Cleaning 552, 555
Defrosting/Defogging 181
Washer Fluid 528
Wiper Blades 537
Wipers and Washers 151
Winter Tires
Snow Tires 547
Tire Chains 547
Wipers and Washers 151
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 152
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 537
Wireless Charger 174
WMA 201, 210, 252, 265
Worn Tires 539